Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 830CA.

- For proper handset use, read this guide.
- Keep this guide in a convenient place for reference.
- Accessible SoftBank services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

SoftBank 830CA is compatible with 3G network technology.

Notes

- Copying this guide in whole or part without authorization is prohibited.
- Content of this guide is subject to change without prior notice.
- Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this guide. Please contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-48) about unclear or missing information.

Before Using This Guide

- SoftBank 830CA is referred to as "handset" in this guide.
- Most operation descriptions are based on default settings and begin in Standby.
- Sample screenshots* are provided for reference only. Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance.
- Key illustrations are simplified and differ in appearance from actual handset keys.
- Handset illustrations are based on 830CA.
- "(Japanese)" appears next to functions or services which require Japanese ability to use.

* Standby Display images in this manual are based on 830CA's default setting. Main Menu and window themes are also based on the default settings.

Search Guide

●Function/Service Name Search

●Display Indicators

P. 1-6 - P. 1-7

●Learning Basics

P. 2-2 - P. 2-7

●Solving Problems

●Objective Search

- My Number & E-mail Address
- Customizing Handset
- Mastering Basics
- 830CA Features
- SoftBank Mobile Features

My Phone Number
Check your phone number on handset.
P. 1-19

My Account Details
Save your contact information to Account Details. Transfer the information to other handsets via Infrared.
P. 1-19

Customize E-mail Address
Change the account name (part before @) of your e-mail address.
P. 13-22

Exchange Information Wirelessly
Send your e-mail address to compatible devices via infrared.
P. 12-2

Download Music
Download songs from Chaku-Uta® sites and set as ringtones or play back on Music Player.
P. 9-3

Set Ringtones
Set your favorite songs as ringtones.
P. 13-11

Wallpaper
Set your favorite image to appear in Standby with clock or calendar.
P. 13-4

Add Shortcuts
Add frequently used functions to Standby shortcut icons.
P. 2-4

Basic Operations
Learn basic menu navigation and key operations.
P. 2-2

Text Entry
Enter text for composing messages, creating Phone Book entries, etc.
P. 2-10

Messaging Services
Use S! Mail or SMS to send text messages. Attach and send files via S! Mail.
P. 5-2

Mobile Internet
Use Yahoo! Keitai to access Mobile Internet sites tailored for SoftBank customers.
P. 6-2

Music Player
Download songs and play them on handset.
P. 9-2

Camera & Video Camera
Shoot still images and videos.
P. 7-2

TV
Handset supports One Seg Digital TV.
P. 8-2

Osaifu-Keitai®
Use your handset for payment of purchases with electronic money or as a commuter ticket or point card.
P. 10-2

Yahoo! Keitai Sites
A special portal site for SoftBank handsets enhances your Internet browsing experience.
P. 6-3

Graphic Mail
Create HTML messages by changing font and background colors, inserting images, etc.
P. 5-4

Gaming Device
Play S! Appli games downloaded from Yahoo! Keitai sites.
P. 9-6

S! Quick News
Subscribe to News and receive automatic updates regularly.
P. 6-11

Table of Contents

8 TV

9 Music Player & S! Appli

10 Tools

11 Data Management

12 Connectivity

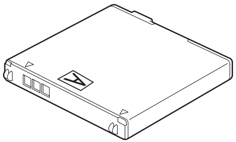
13 Customization

14 Appendix

Accessories

The following items are included in the package with handset.
For additional information on accessories, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-48).

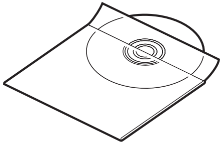
■ **Battery (CHBAA1)**



■ **Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable (Sample)**



■ **Utility Software (Sample)***



SoftBank 830CA supports microSD™ memory card (hereinafter referred to as “memory card”). Purchase a memory card to use related functions.

* Complimentary sample not available for purchase. Updates/upgrades may become available via SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (http://www.softbank.jp) without prior notification. Please check for the newest versions and download as required.

Safety Precautions

- To ensure proper use of your handset, read these safety precautions carefully before use. Keep this guide for future reference.
- Observe these safety precautions to prevent injuries and damages to property.
- Understand the meanings of the signs and symbols shown below.

Signs

⚠DANGER	Great risk of death or serious injury*1 from improper use
⚠WARNING	Risk of death or serious injury*1 from improper use
⚠CAUTION	Risk of injury*2 or damage to property*3 from improper use

*1 Serious injury: Includes loss of eyesight, physical injury, burns (high-temperature and low-temperature), electric shock, bone fracture, poisoning, and other conditions with long-term consequences that require hospitalization and/or prolonged treatment.

*2 Injury: Includes physical injury, burns (high-temperature and low-temperature), electric shock, and other conditions without long-term consequences that do not require hospitalization and/or prolonged treatment.

*3 Damage to property: Includes incidental damage to structures and household property and/or to pets and livestock.

Symbols

	Action is prohibited.
	Disassembly is prohibited.
	Handling with wet hands is prohibited.
	Wetting the product is prohibited.
	Action is compulsory.
	Power cord must be unplugged.

SoftBank accepts no liability for any loss or damages incurred by you or a third party as a result of missed calls, etc., due to malfunction, erroneous operation or failure of this product.

⚠DANGER

Handset, Battery, AC Charger, USIM Card & Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable

Do not leave handset in places subject to high temperatures (near an open flame, in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day).

May cause deformation or malfunction; or may cause battery to leak, overheat, rupture, ignite or suffer performance loss and reduced service life. Also, outer housing may become hot, resulting in burns and posing a fire risk.

Do not disassemble/modify/solder handset.

May cause fire, injury, electric shock or malfunction. Also, battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.
SoftBank accepts no liability for any loss or damage to handset or to a vehicle due to user modifications. Modifying a mobile telephone in any way is prohibited by law.

Do not wet handset.

Exposing handset to fluids such as water or pet urine may cause overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction, injury, etc.

Use SoftBank specified devices (see page vi) only.

Use of non-specified devices may cause battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite; or may result in malfunction or fire. Use of non-specified USIM Card may cause loss of data or malfunction.

Keep conductive materials (e.g. metal pieces, pencil lead, etc.) away from External Device Port and other device port.

May cause short circuit, resulting in fire or malfunction.

Turn off handset when entering gas stations or other places where flammable gases are generated. Do not charge battery in such places.

Gases may ignite. When using Osaifu-Keitai® (mobile phone with digital wallet function), turn handset power off beforehand. (When IC card lock is enabled, disable card lock and then turn power off.)

Do not place handset, battery, AC Charger or USIM Card in a microwave oven or pressure cooker.

May cause battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite; may cause handset/AC Charger to malfunction, overheat, emit smoke or ignite; or may damage circuit components.

When plugging AC Charger into outlet, ensure that no metal strap or other metal object is in contact with power plug.

May cause fire, electric shock, injury or damage.

Do not heat or throw into a fire.

May cause battery to ignite, rupture, or may cause a fire.

Do not expose camera lens to direct sunlight for an extended period.

May cause handset/battery to ignite, rupture, break, or may cause a fire.

Battery

Do not short-circuit positive (⊕) and negative (⊖) terminals of battery and do not let wires or other metal objects come in contact with a terminal. Do not carry or store battery with metal necklaces, etc.

May cause battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.

If you have difficulty in attaching battery to handset, do not force battery into place. Check the direction of battery before attaching it.

Battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.

Do not throw battery into a fire.

May cause battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.

Do not puncture battery with a nail, hit it with a hammer or step on it.

May cause battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.

If battery fluid gets into your eyes, immediately rinse your eyes with clean water without rubbing them, and consult a doctor.

Failing to do so may result in losing your eyesight.

If battery leaks or emits an unusual odor, immediately stop using it and keep it away from fire.

Battery fluid is flammable and could ignite causing fire or explosion.

If battery fluid gets on you skin or clothing, immediately stop using battery and rinse the fluid off with clean water.

Battery fluid may injure your skin.

Do not expose battery to fresh or salt water, pet urine, or other fluids. Do not charge battery while wet. If handset was dropped into water or other fluid, immediately turn power off, remove battery, and contact your SoftBank dealer or SoftBank customer service.

Wet battery may overheat, rupture or ignite.

Do not use damaged or leaking battery.

May cause battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.

⚠ WARNING

Handset, Battery, AC Charger, USIM Card & Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable

Do not drop or throw battery or otherwise expose to excessive shock.

May cause battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite; or may cause malfunction or fire.

If thunder is heard outside, immediately turn handset power off and move to a safe place.

Failing to do so may attract lightning and cause electric shock.

Do not short-circuit External Device Port when AC Charger is plugged into an AC outlet. Do not touch External Device Port with your fingers, etc.

May cause fire, malfunction, electric shock or injury.

If battery is not fully charged after specified charging time has elapsed, stop charging it.

Battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite, and handset may be damaged or ignite.

If handset was dropped or otherwise damaged and internal parts are exposed, do not touch exposed parts. Contact your SoftBank dealer or SoftBank customer service.

May cause shock or injury from damaged parts.

Do not use handset in humid locations such as bathrooms and do not touch handset with wet hands.

May cause shock, short-circuiting, and corrosion. (Be especially careful when using handset in rain or snow, at the beach, or near water.)

If handset has become wet, immediately unplug AC Charger and remove battery. Damage caused by water or humidity is not covered by the warranty, and repair may not be possible.

Do not play games, listen to music, or watch TV on handset while driving a vehicle, riding a bicycle or while walking.

Doing so is unsafe and may lead to accidents.

If you notice an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration, deformation, etc. while using, charging or storing handset, immediately do the following:

1. Unplug AC Charger from AC outlet.
2. Turn handset power off.
3. Remove battery from handset.

Continuing use may cause handset to overheat, rupture or ignite; or may cause battery to leak.

Handset

Do not point infrared beam at anyone's eyes.

May cause eye injury. Do not direct infrared beam toward another infrared device as this may interfere with the device operation.

Do not place handset on the dashboard close to airbags.

In case of airbag inflation, handset may hit passengers resulting in injury, malfunction or breakage.

Do not use handset while driving any vehicle, including cars and motorbikes, or while riding a bicycle.

Doing so could lead to accidents. Use of a mobile phone while operating a vehicle is prohibited by law, and in some areas, use while bicycle riding also is subject to penalties.

If you are wearing electronic medical equipment, do not carry handset in your breast pocket or inner pocket.

Using handset near electronic medical equipment may cause the equipment to malfunction.

Do not allow fluids such as water, metal pieces or flammable materials to enter USIM Card Slot or microSD™ Memory Card Slot.

May cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.

Do not swing handset by its strap, etc.

Handset may strike you or others, resulting in injury, malfunction or breakage.
Do not use a strap that is damaged.

Keep handset power off in places where use of mobile phones is prohibited, such as on an airplane or in a hospital.

May affect electronic devices or electronic medical equipment. Disable the auto power-on function before turning off handset. Observe the instructions of individual medical institutions about use of mobile phones.
Handset operations aboard an aircraft may be punishable by law.

Keep handset away from your ear when calling in handsfree mode. When playing games or music with Earphone-Microphone connected to handset, adjust the volume properly.

Prolonged listening at excessive volume levels may impair your hearing. Being unable to clearly hear surrounding sounds may result in an accident.

If you have a weak heart, be careful with incoming call vibrator and ring volume settings.

These may affect your heart.

Keep handset power off near high-precision electronic devices or devices using weak signals.

Failing to do so may interfere with the device operation.

* Examples of such devices:
Hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted defibrillators and other electronic medical equipment; fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatic control devices

If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker, implanted defibrillator or other electronic medical equipment, consult with the individual medical device manufacturer or distributor about the possible influence of radio waves.

If Display or camera lens is damaged, be careful of broken glass pieces or exposed internal components.
The shatter-proof film prevents Display/camera lens from shattering; however touching broken glass edges and exposed pieces may cause injury.

Before using handset (calls, mail, camera, games, Internet, Media Player or TV), check your surroundings and make sure that the intended use is safe and appropriate.
Failure to do so may result in falls or accidents.

Do not turn on the light near a person's eyes. Do not look directly into the light and do not point the light at another person's eyes.
This may cause impaired eyesight and other injury. In particular, do not take pictures of infants at very close range.

Do not point the light at the driver of a vehicle.
This may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle and lead to accidents.

In very rare cases, stimulation by strong light or flashing images may lead to symptoms such as convulsive fits or temporary loss of consciousness. If you have experienced such symptoms in the past, consult a physician before using the handset.

Battery

Do not use a battery that has been subject to strong external force or shock (such as being dropped or stepped on).
Continuing use may cause battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite; or may cause malfunction or fire.

If you notice an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration, deformation, etc. while using, charging or storing battery, carefully remove it from handset, and contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (see page 14-48).
Continuing use may cause battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.

AC Charger

Do not use AC Charger if cord is damaged.
May cause electric shock, overheating or fire.

If thunder is heard, do not touch handset or AC Charger.
May attract lightning and cause electric shock.

Use AC Charger only on a stable surface, and do not cover devices with cloth, blankets, etc.
Handset may come off; or heat may build up resulting in fire or malfunction.

Do not place heavy objects on AC Charger cord.
May cause electric shock or fire.

Do not touch AC Charger cord or AC outlet with wet hands.

May cause electric shock.

Use AC Charger only with the specified power supply and voltage.

Failing to do so may cause AC Charger to ignite or overheat, or may cause electric shock, fire or malfunction.

- AC Charger: 100 to 240 V AC (for household AC outlets only)

Wipe off any dust on the power plug.

Failing to do so may cause fire.

Insert plug of AC Charger fully and securely into AC outlet.

Failing to do so may cause AC Charger to ignite or overheat, or may cause electric shock or fire. Do not use a damaged AC Charger or damaged AC outlet.

Do not pull the cord by force; hold the plug when unplugging AC Charger from AC outlet.

Pulling the cord may damage the cord, resulting in electric shock or fire.

Unplug the power plug from AC outlet if handset is not used for an extended period of time.

Failing to do so may cause electric shock, fire or malfunction.

Protect AC Charger from water, pet urine, and other fluids. If water or other fluid gets into AC Charger, immediately unplug it from AC outlet.

Failing to do so may cause AC Charger to overheat, ignite, emit smoke, or may cause electric shock or fire.

Never use AC Charger in humid places such as in bathrooms.

May cause electric shock and malfunction.

Unplug AC Charger from AC outlet before cleaning.

Failing to do so may cause electric shock.

Handset Use Near Electronic Medical Equipment

- The following information conforms to "The Guidelines on Use of Mobile Phones and Other Devices to Prevent Electromagnetic Wave Interference with Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan), as well as refers to "The Investigative Research Report on the Influence of Electromagnetic Waves on Medical Equipment" (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).

Observe the following in medical institutions:

- Do not bring mobile phones into an operating room, ICU (Intensive Care Unit) or CCU (Coronary Care Unit).
- Turn off mobile phones in hospital wards.
- Turn off mobile phones in lobbies if there is electronic medical equipment nearby.
- Observe the instructions of individual medical institutions and do not use or bring mobile phones into prohibited areas.
- Disable the auto power-on function before turning off mobile phones.

Keep handset power off in crowded places such as crowded trains; persons with implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators may be nearby.

Radio waves may interfere with the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators.

!	**If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator, carry and use handset at a distance of at least 22 centimeters from the implanted area.** Radio waves may interfere with the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators.
!	**When using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators outside of medical institutions (for home treatment, etc.), consult with the individual medical device manufacturer or distributor about the possible influence of radio waves.** Radio waves may interfere with the operation of electronic medical equipment.

⚠CAUTION

Handset, Battery, AC Charger, USIM Card & Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable

⃠	**Do not place handset on a slope or unstable surface. Protect handset from shocks.** May cause handset to fall resulting in injury or malfunction. Be especially careful when vibrator function of handset is enabled.
⃠	**Do not store handset in humid or dusty places.** May cause malfunction.
!	**When a child uses handset, it is recommended that a parent provides proper instructions to the child and ensure those instructions are followed.** Failing to do so may cause injury, etc.
⃠	**Keep handset out of reach of infants.** Accidental swallowing may lead to suffocation and injury.
!	**Be careful when using handset for an extended period of time with AC Charger connected.** Handset, battery and charger (sold separately) may become warm if you operate handset for an extended period of time while charging. Prolonged contact with warm devices may cause redness, itching, irritation or low-temperature burns.
⃠	**Do not exceed maximum ratings for outlets, cables, and wiring components.** "Piggybacking" of plugs causing maximum ratings to be exceeded may lead to overheating and fire.

	Do not place handset near corrosive chemicals or in locations subject to corrosive gases. May lead to damage and loss of stored data.
	Do not use handset in locations with high humidity. If worn close to the body, perspiration may cause damage and malfunction. Damage caused by water or humidity is not covered by the warranty, and repair may not be possible.

Handset

	Keep magnetic cards away from handset and make sure that a magnetic card is not trapped when closing handset. Failing to do so may cause magnetic data on a cash card, credit card, telephone card or floppy disk to be lost.
	Keep magnetized objects away from handset. Strong magnetism nearby may cause malfunction.
	If Display is broken and liquid crystal leaks, do not put it in your mouth, inhale it or put it on your skin. **If liquid crystal enters your eyes or mouth, rinse immediately with clean water and consult a doctor. If liquid crystal adheres to your skin or clothing, immediately wipe it off with alcohol and then wash it with soap and water.** May result in loss of eyesight or skin damage.
	When a ring tone or melody is playing, keep speaker away from your ear. May impair your hearing.
	Using handset in a car may affect electronic equipment of the car. If that happens, do not use handset in the car to ensure safe driving.
	Be careful not to pinch your fingers or strap when opening and closing handset. May cause injury or damage.

Depending on your constitution and physical condition, irritations, rash, eczema, etc. may develop on your skin. If that happens, immediately stop using handset and consult a doctor.

The following materials and surface treatments are used.

Part		Material	Surface Treatment
Outer housing	Display side	PA resin + Stainless sheet	Acrylic UV cured coating
	Keypad side	PA resin + Stainless sheet	Acrylic UV cured coating
Metallic edges (Keypad side)		ABS resin	Evaporation + Acrylic UV cured coating
Metallic strips (either side of Camera lens)		ABS resin	Evaporation + Acrylic UV cured coating
Metallic frame (around Camera lens)		Aluminum alloy	Alumite plating
Battery compartment	Screw	Steel	Nickel plating
	Battery terminal	Copper alloy	Gold plating
Battery (Terminal)		Copper foil	Nickel + gold plating

!	**Be careful not to pinch your fingers in the hinge when opening handset.** Failing to do so may cause injury.
⃠	**Keep covers (External Device Port, microSD™ Memory Card Slot, etc.) closed.** If these are left open, dust or water may get inside handset, causing malfunction.
!	**Be mindful of objects adhering to handset.** The magnetic field near receiver and speaker of handset may cause small metallic objects such as pins, clips, staples or paper cutter blades to adhere to handset, which may lead to injury. Remove any adhering objects before using handset.
!	**While watching TV on handset, avoid prolonged direct contact with skin and do not cover handset with paper, cloth, blankets or similar.** May cause burns and lead to malfunction.

Battery

⃠	**Do not dispose of batteries as municipal waste.** May cause fire or environmental destruction. Bring used batteries to the nearest SoftBank Shop or recycling center after insulating the terminals with tape. Be sure to observe local regulations on battery disposal.

USIM Card

!	**Be careful with the cut section of IC chip when inserting or removing USIM Card.** May injure your hands.
!	**Use only specified USIM Cards.** Use of non-specified cards may lead to data loss and malfunction. For information on specified USIM Cards, contact your SoftBank dealer or SoftBank Customer Service, General Information (P. 14-48).
⃠	**Do not disassemble or modify USIM Card.** May lead to data loss and malfunction.
⃠	**Avoid open fire, heat sources, direct sunlight, high temperatures or humidity, and high levels of dust.** May cause USIM Card to melt, overheat, emit smoke, or may lead to data loss and malfunction.
⃠	**Take care not to touch, damage, or short-circuit IC chip on USIM Card.** May lead to data loss and malfunction.
⃠	**Do not drop USIM Card and protect it from shocks.** May lead to malfunction.

Do not bend or break USIM Card and do not place heavy objects on it. May lead to malfunction.
Do not let USIM Card get wet. Exposing USIM Card to fluids such as water or pet urine may cause malfunction.
Keep USIM Card out of reach of infants. Accidental swallowing may lead to suffocation and injury.

AC Charger

Do not charge a wet battery. May cause battery to overheat, ignite or rupture.
Unplug AC Charger from AC outlet when charging is finished. Failing to do so may cause fire or malfunction.
Do not leave AC Charger connected to handset when battery is removed. May cause fire or electric shock.

Usage Basics

- As handset uses radio waves, it cannot be used where signals are weak or when it is out of service area. If you move to a place with poor signal reception (e.g. beside/inside a building, in a tunnel, underground or mountain area), calls may be suddenly cut off.
- Take care not to disturb other people when using handset in public places.
- If you receive a call while walking, move to a safe place before answering.
- SoftBank accepts no liability for any damages resulting from loss or alteration of data stored on your handset or microSD™ Memory Card. Back up important data such as Phone Book entries and image/sound files.
- Handset is a wireless station under Japanese Radio Law. You may be requested to submit your handset for inspection based on this law.
- Be aware of eavesdropping. Handset employs a digital signal that provides a high level of privacy protection. However, the possibility of eavesdropping by a third party using special means cannot be ruled out.

  *Eavesdropping:

  Interception of radio signals by a third party during communication, either intentionally or accidentally
- Before watching TV on handset, move to a well-lit place and maintain adequate distance from Display to protect your eyesight.
- Make sure strap or other objects do not get trapped when closing handset; may cause malfunction or damage handset.
- Keep a separate record of data you saved to handset. SoftBank accepts no liability for any loss of data stored on your handset.
- When Battery Strength Indicator flashes and Charging Indicator is out, charging is disabled. Ambient temperature may be too high or low. Charge battery at an ambient temperature of 5 to 35°C.
- If you use handset for the first time or have not used it for a long time, charge battery before using handset. During charging, battery may become warm. This is normal and not a defect.
- Operation time per charge varies with usage environment and battery condition. (In an extremely hot or cold environment, capacity of battery will be reduced, and service life will also be shorter. Using handset at normal temperatures is recommended.)
- When battery service life is near its end, battery may expand slightly. This is not a malfunction.
- Do not charge battery:
  - At an ambient temperature outside of appropriate range (5 to 35°C)
  - In a humid, dusty or shaky place
  - Near a landline phone, TV or radio
- AC Charger may become warm while charging. This is not a malfunction.
- Using handset on trains or other public transportation may, in some rare cases, affect their electronic devices.

- A call may not be connected or you may hear noise:
  - In an extremely cold place (e.g. freezer storehouse) where handset may not operate normally
  - Near metal furniture which may interfere with signal transmission
  - Near electromagnetic sources or magnetized items, including electric products, audio-visual equipment and office appliances (e.g. computer, microwave oven, speaker, TV set, radio, fax machine, fluorescent lamp, word processor, electric kotatsu, inverter-driven air conditioner, electromagnetic cooker)
- Do not rub or scratch Display with a metal object, etc. Doing so may damage Display resulting in malfunction or breakage.
- Do not subject handset to excessive shock. Do not deform Charger Terminals. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Do not bring handset near devices with strong magnetic fields, such as speakers, TV sets, or a magnet. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Handset use near landlines, radios or similar devices may affect operation of such devices.
- Back up image/video files and music files (e.g. downloaded ringtones) to a PC. Please note, copy protected files may not be backed up.
- Do not subject Display to excessive force. This may cause damage and lead to malfunction.
- Do not press keys/buttons with excessive force using your nails or other hard objects. This may cause damage and lead to malfunction.
- Stored mail and downloaded data (regardless whether fee-based or free) cannot be transferred from one handset to another when obtaining service or when changing to a different model.
- Do not pull External Device Port cover with excessive force; may cause damage.
- Do not exert excessive force on hinge when opening/closing or using handset. Swinging or bending handset may cause malfunction and damage; handle with care.
- Earpiece should be centered over ear. Otherwise, sound may be blocked.
- Sudden change from cold to warm/humid environment may cause condensation inside handset. Using handset in this condition may cause malfunction.
- Do not wind the AC Charger cord around the plug. This may lead to electric shock or fire.
- Prolonged exposure to sound at high volume levels may cause hearing damage. When listening to music, sound may leak from earphones; be mindful of others on trains or in public places.
- Using handset (Music Player, TV, etc.) while walking may be cause for decreased attention, leading to accidents. Always stay alert, especially when crossing a road, at railroad crossings etc.
- When not using the handset for an extended period, remove the battery and store it in a cool, dry place.

Inside Cars

- Do not use handset while driving. Doing so may compromise safe driving and cause an accident. Handset operations in a car may be punishable by law.
- Before using handset, stop the car in a safe place where parking is permitted.

Aboard Aircraft

Never use (or even power on) handset on an aircraft. Doing so may compromise flight safety and cause an accident. Handset operations aboard an aircraft may be punishable by law.

Handling

- **Do not get handset wet. Handset, battery, AC Charger and USIM Card are not waterproof. Do not use them in the rain or in humid places (e.g. bathrooms). If worn close to the body, moisture from sweat may corrode internal parts and cause malfunction. Damage caused by water or humidity is not covered by the warranty, and repair may not be possible.**
- Wipe with a dry soft cloth (e.g. eyeglass cloth) to clean handset. The color LCD of handset has a special coating to enhance the visibility. Rubbing Display with a dry cloth may scratch the surface. Clean handset carefully using a dry soft cloth for eyeglasses. If moisture or soil is left on Display, the coating may be stained or peel off. Do not use alcohol, solvent, benzene or detergent, as it may cause discoloration and remove printed logos.
- Occasionally clean the power terminals and the battery terminals with a dry cotton swab or cloth. Soiled terminals may cause poor contacts resulting in power failure and insufficient charging. When cleaning, take care not to deform the terminals.
- Do not place handset near the vent of an air conditioner. Condensation may form due to abrupt temperature changes, leading to internal corrosion and malfunction.
- Do not apply excessive force to handset and battery. Placing handset in a bag packed with many items or sitting down with handset in your pocket may damage Display, internal circuit board or battery, and cause malfunction. Close handset before placing inside a bag. Neglecting to do so may cause damage. Such damage is not covered by the warranty, even if there is no external damage.
- Avoid extremely cold and high temperatures. Use handset at an ambient temperature of 5 to 35°C, and a humidity of 45 to 85 %. If handset is left in an extremely hot place, handset may power off automatically.
- When connecting an external device to External Device Port, do not insert the connector into the port at an angle or pull the cord forcibly. Doing so may cause malfunction or breakage.
- Ensure that External Device Port and connector for stereo earphone conversion cable are clean.
- Although handset becomes warm during use or charging, it is not a malfunction.
- Do not leave the camera lens exposed to direct sunlight. Doing so may discolor or burn the optical element.

- Do not use handset without battery cover. Doing so may cause battery to come off or may result in malfunction or breakage.
- Do not affix thick stickers or labels to the Display or keypad side. Doing so may result in malfunction, and may cause keys and buttons to be wrongly activated when handset is closed, resulting in malfunction and reduced battery life.
- Battery is a consumable item. Replace battery with a new one if the operation time becomes extremely short even after it is fully charged. Purchase a new battery designated for handset.
- Do not store empty battery. Doing so may degrade performance and shorten life of battery.
- Do not leave battery removed or uncharged for an extended period of time. Doing so may alter or erase the settings and data you saved. SoftBank accepts no liability for any damages resulting from such loss or alteration.
- When removing Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable or AC Charger from External Device Port, do not pull the cord, hold the connector. Pulling the cord may result in wire breakage or malfunction.
- Charge battery at an ambient temperature of 5 to 35°C.
- If you use an outlet with pullout prevention feature, refer to the instruction manual of the outlet.
- Do not insert USIM Card with a sticker or label attached to it into handset. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Do not insert the connector of Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable by force; as it may damage the connector. Connecting Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable is only possible when the connector is inserted from a proper angle with correct orientation. Check the angle and orientation again when you find difficulty in inserting the connector.
- Your voice cannot be sent to the other party if earphones with no microphone are connected to the earphone terminal of Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable.
- When stereo earphones are connected to Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable, the same monaural sound outputs through both earphones during calls, etc. When a monaural earphone is connected to Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable, sound outputs through left earphone only.
- Do not apply strong shock to Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable or throw it.
- Do not place a heavy object on Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable.
- Turn power off before removing battery. Failure to do so may result in corruption or loss of stored data.
- Do not wind stereo earphone conversion cable around handset. This may result in decreased sensitivity, noise or dropped calls.
- When using functions such as web browsing, TV, voice calls, video recording etc. for an extended time, and while the AC Charger is connected, parts of the handset may become warm. This is normal, but care must be taken to avoid the risk of low-temperature burns through prolonged contact with the skin.
- When carrying the stereo earphone conversion cable around, take care that connector does not get dirty or deformed.

Camera

- Observe proper etiquette, laws and regulations regarding camera use in public places. Offending public order and morals by using handset may be subject to penalties based on applicable laws and regulations (e.g. nuisance prevention ordinance by municipal governments).
- Before taking photos/videos of important events (such as a wedding), perform a test to ensure that photos/videos are reproduced properly and sound is recorded clearly.
- Do not use handset to record copyright-protected materials such as books, or materials for which permission has not been given.

Copyrights

Copyrighted materials, such as music, images, computer programs and databases, and their respective copyright holders are protected by copyright laws. Duplication of copyrighted materials is permitted only for individual or home use. Duplications (including data conversion), modifications, transfers or network distributions of copyrighted materials for purposes other than stated above without permission of the copyright holders constitute an infringement of copyrights and violation of copyright holders' rights, potentially causing claims for reparations or criminal punishment.
Always observe applicable copyright laws when making copies using handset and recording materials using handset camera.
The software installed in this handset is a copyrighted material and involves copyrights and human rights of copyright holders which are protected by copyright laws. Do not duplicate, modify, alter, detach from the hardware, disassemble, decompile or reverse-engineer the software in whole or in part by yourself, nor allow any third party to do the same, either.

Intellectual Property Rights

- Duplicating, modifying or publicly transmitting copyright-protected contents (e.g. text, images, music, software) photographed or downloaded from websites without the permission of the copyright holders is prohibited by copyright laws, with the exception that the duplication or quotation of those is made only for personal use.
  Shooting or recording a demonstration, performance or exhibition may be prohibited in some cases even if it is for personal use.
  Shooting a photo of a person using this product without his or her permission, or posting a photo of a person you shot on websites without his or her permission may constitute an infringement of portrait rights.
- S! Appli, S! Mail, S! Loop, Graphic Mail, PC Site Browser are registered trademarks or trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.
- "SOFTBANK," SOFTBANK's equivalent in Japanese, and the SOFTBANK logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and in other countries.
- Yahoo! and the "Yahoo!" and "Y!" logos are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc. in the US.
- Osaifu-Keitai® is a registered trademark of NTT DOCOMO.

- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:
  4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109
  5,504,773 5,101,501 5,506,865
  5,109,390 5,511,073 5,228,054
  5,535,239 5,267,261 5,544,196
  5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338
  5,600,754 5,414,796 5,657,420
  5,416,797 5,659,569 5,710,784
  5,778,338
- T9® is trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Nuance Communications, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and/or other countries.
- The microSD™ logo is a trademark.
- This product is licensed complying with MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License, and you are permitted to use personally and for the nonprofit purpose in the following situations:
  ・To record a movie based on the standard of MPEG-4 Visual (MPEG-4 Video)
  ・To play MPEG-4 Video recorded by the consumer engaged in the nonprofit activities
  ・To play MPEG-4 Video provided by the provider licensed by MPEG-LA
  When you use it for other purposes, such as promotion, in-house information and profit activity, contact the U.S. corporation MPEG LA, LLC.
- This product contains Adobe® Flash® Lite™ Player under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated.
  Copyright© 1995 - 2008 Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved.
  Adobe, Flash and Flash Lite are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
- QR code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Inc.

- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002 - 2008 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved.
  JBlend and JBlend-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
- Java and all Java-related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of US Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- "Chaku-Uta" and "Chaku-Uta Full" are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc. in Japan and/or other countries.
- This product contains NetFront Mobile Client Suite of ACCESS CO., LTD.
  ACCESS, ACCESS logo and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in the United States, Japan and other countries.
  ©2008 ACCESS CO., LTD. All rights reserved.
  This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.
- This product is equipped with IrFront by ACCESS CO., LTD. as the infrared data exchange function.
  Copyright© 1996 - 2008 ACCESS CO., LTD.
  ACCESS and IrFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and/or other countries.
- "Multitask", "Emotion-Expressing Mail", "Quick Info", and "Word Prediction" are trademarks or registered trademarks of NEC Corporation.
- Powered By Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™
  MASCOT CAPSULE® are registered trademarks of HI CORPORATION.
- G-GUIDE, G-GUIDE MOBILE and their logos are registered trademarks in Japan of U.S. Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and/or its affiliates.
- IrSimple™, IrSS™ or IrSimpleShot™ are trademarks of Infrared Data Association®.
- Microsoft®, Windows®, and Windows Vista® are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- Dialog Clarity and WOW technologies are industrialized based on the license from SRS Labs, Inc.
  Dialog Clarity, SRS, WOW and the (●) symbol are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.

- This product contains software licensed complying with GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc. For more details, see “readme.txt” in the “GPL・LGPL等について” folder on the bundled CD-ROM. (“readme.txt” is only available in Japanese version.)
- This product is equipped with the font “FontAvenue” product by NEC Corporation.
- is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.
- FeliCa is contactless IC Card technology developed by Sony Corporation. FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
- Edy is a pre-paid electronic money service brand managed by bitWallet, Inc.
- Suica and モバイルSuica are registered trademarks of East Japan Railway Company.
- The other company names and brand names described in this guide are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

Functional Limitations

After handset upgrade, subscription cancellation or extended periods of handset disuse, TV functions become unavailable.

Caution

Do not use handset if it has been altered. Using the altered device is a violation of the Radio Law. This handset is certified to conform to the technical standards for specific radio equipment based on the Radio Law, and Technical Conformity Mark is printed on the model name seal as certification. If you remove screws and make alterations inside of handset, the technical standards conformity certification becomes invalid. Do not use handset with the certification invalid, as it is a violation of the Radio Law.

SAR Certification Information

830CA meet the technical standards set by Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (MIC) regarding radio wave absorption by a human body.
These technical standards have been established on a scientific basis to prevent radio waves emitted from wireless devices such as mobile phones that are used close to a human head from affecting human health. These standards require that the SAR (Specific Absorption Rate), an indicator of the amount of average radio frequency energy absorbed in the side of a human head, must not exceed the permissive value of 2 W/kg*. This value includes a substantial safety margin to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and physical size. The value is equal to the international guideline recommended by the International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) that has a cooperative relationship with the World Health Organization (WHO).

* The technical standards are stipulated in the Radio Law (Article 14-2 of Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment).

The highest SAR value is 0.775W/kg for 830CA. This value was obtained in accordance with the MIC testing procedure with handset transmitting at its highest permitted power level. While there may be differences in SAR levels among individual products, they all meet the MIC’s permissible value. Because mobile phones are designed to operate at their minimum power level required to communicate with base stations, the actual SAR of handset during a call is usually below the highest value.

For further information about SAR, see the following websites:

・Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (MIC)
  http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/index.htm
・Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB)
  http://www.arib-emf.org/index02.html (Japanese)

SoftBank’s Body SAR Policy

* Body SAR: The SAR value at the maximum transmission power when continuously talking with handset placed on the body and using earphone-microphone.

** Specific Absorption Rate (SAR): The value measured when having talked continuously for 6 minutes.

*** Placement on the body: Measurements are taken with the rear of handset facing the body at a distance of 1.5 cm as the ordinary handset position. In order to comply with radio frequency exposure requirements, use an accessory (e.g. belt clip, holster) that does not contain metallic parts to maintain a 1.5 cm separation between the body and handset.

For further information, see the following SoftBank website:
http://www.softbank.jp/corporate/legal/emf/emf03.html

European RF Exposure Information

This handset 830CA is a radio transmitter and receiver. This product has been confirmed not to exceed the limits recommended by international guidelines for radio frequency.
These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) and include a substantial safety margin to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.
The influence on the human body of radio waves emitted from mobile phones is measured employing a unit known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg. The maximum SAR value for this model handset, when placed on the ear, is 1.031W/kg for 830CA*. As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in SoftBank’s Body SAR Policy. In this case, the maximum SAR value is 0.395W/kg for 830CA.
Since the SAR is measured at the highest transmitting power level, the actual SAR during a call is usually much smaller. This is because mobile phones are designed to operate at their minimum power levels necessary to communicate with base stations.
The World Health Organization (WHO) has stated that present scientific information about mobile phone use does not indicate any adverse effects on the human body. They recommend limiting the talking time or using a handsfree device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body to reduce influence of exposure to radio waves.

Additional information can be found at the WHO website:
http://www.who.int/emf

* Measurements with handset placed on the body are carried out in accordance with the FCC standards. The values are based on European requirements.

Declaration of Conformity

CE 0168

The product "830CA" is declared to conform with the essential requirements of European Union Directive 1999/5/EC Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 3.1(a), 3.1(b) and 3.2.
The Declaration of Conformity can be found on the following website:
http://k-tai.casio.jp/

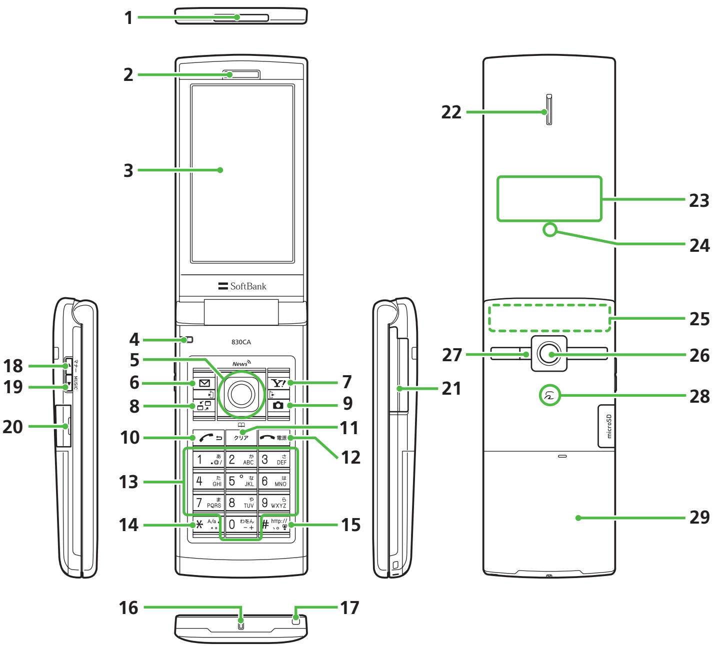
Minding Mobile Manners

Use your handset responsibly. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn handset power off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from use in restaurants, lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Getting Started

◎SoftBank 830CA



For better signal reception, do not cover Internal Antenna with hands or anything else.

1	Infrared Port	
2	Earpiece	
3	Display	
4	Light Sensor	
5	Multi Selector	& *
6	Mail Key	*
7	Yahoo! Keitai Key	*
8	Menu/Multitask Key	*
9	Camera Key	*
10	Send Key	*
11	Clear/Back Key	クリア *
12	Power/End Key	*
13	Keypad	0 - 9 *
14	＊Key	＊ *
15	＃/Manner Key	＃ *
16	Microphone	
17	Strap Eyelet	
18	Volume Up/Manner Key	*
19	Volume Down/Music Key	*
20	Memory Card Slot	
21	External Device Port	
22	Speaker	
23	Illumination Panel	
24	Charging Indicator/Camera Indicator/ Illumination	
25	Internal Antenna	
26	Camera	
27	Light	
28	FeliCa Mark	
29	Battery Cover	

* Key illustrations are simplified and differ in appearance from actual handset keys.

Basic Key Operations

◎In Standby

No.	Operation	Description
5		Access Shortcuts.
	Press and hold	Open S! Quick News List.
		Open Phone Book Search menu.
		Open Received Calls window.
	Press and hold	Open Received Address List.
		Open Redial window.
	Press and hold	Open Sent Address List.
		Open Main Menu.
6		Open Mail menu.
	Press and hold	Compose a new message.
7		Access Yahoo! Keitai portal.
	Press and hold	Open Yahoo! Keitai menu.

No.	Operation	Description
8		Open Main menu.
		Open Task Switch window (when several functions running).
9		Activate camera in Photo mode.
	Press and hold	Activate camera in BI-DO-RI mode.
11	Press and hold クリア	Delete a Shortcut notification.
12	Press and hold	Power on/off.
13	Press and hold 3	Set/cancel IC Card Lock.
	Press and hold 5	Turn backlight on/off. * Display is dark when backlight off.
	Press and hold 7	Access Font menu (set font, style, size).
	Press and hold 8	Turn Screen Filter on/off. * Display has a white hue and a narrower viewing angle when on. * Screen Filter is off when handset is turned back on.

No.	Operation	Description
13	Press and hold [9]	Turn Light on/off. * You can turn off Light by closing handset. * Using Light for long periods may reduce battery life.
	Press and hold [0]	Enter "+" (international access code).
15	Press and hold [#]	Set/cancel Manner Mode.
18	[▲]	Show clock (when handset is closed).
	Press and hold [▲]	Set/cancel Manner Mode.
19	[▼]	Play messages on Answering Machine (when handset is open).
		Notify missed calls/new messages. Display clock if no missed calls/new messages (when handset is closed).
	Press and hold [▼]	Activate Music Player.

◎During Voice Calls

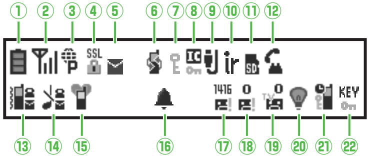
No.	Operation	Description
5	[Up]	Search Phone Book by group.
	Press and hold [Up]	Increase earpiece volume.
	[Down]	Search Phone Book by column.
	Press and hold [Down]	Decrease earpiece volume.
	[Left]	Open Received Calls window.
	[Right]	Open Redial window.
6	[Mail]	Turn handsfree on/off.
8	[Task Switch]	Open Task Switch window.
11	[クリア]	Hold call.
12	[End]	End call.
15	Press and hold [#]	Set/cancel Manner Mode. When Manner Mode is set, the voice reaching other party during a call is louder.
18	[▲]	Increase earpiece volume.
19	[▼]	Decrease earpiece volume.
	Press and hold [▼]	Record other party's voice.

◎During Text Entry

No.	Operation	Description
5	[▼]	Insert line feed " ↲ " (when cursor is at the end of text).
		Move cursor to end of text (when at beginning/in middle of text).
	[▶]	Add a space (when cursor is at the end of text).
6	[✉]	Change to pictograph and symbol lists.
	Press and hold [✉]	Access My Pictograms by category (from in S! Mail).
7	[Y!]	Toggle character entry modes (in 5-touch/T9 input mode).
		Toggle single-byte and double-byte characters (in 2-touch mode).
	Press and hold [Y!]	Toggle text input methods (5-touch/T9/2-touch).

No.	Operation	Description
10	[↶]	Cycle characters on a key in reverse order (in 5-touch mode).
	Press and hold [↶]	Undo last operation (convert, paste, cut, etc.) and return to the previous state.
11	[クリア]	Delete character to right of cursor.
		When there is no character to the right, 1 character to the left is deleted.
	Press and hold [クリア]	All text to the right of the cursor is deleted.
		When there is no text to the right, all text is deleted.
14	[*]	Enter dakuten (゛)/handakuten (゜) (in 5-touch/2-touch mode).
		Toggle case of each character in 5-touch/2-touch mode).
		Toggle upper case and lower case modes (when entering alphanumerics in T9 input mode).
	Press and hold [*]	Insert line feed " ↲ ".

Display Indicators



① Battery Level

② Signal Strength

Out of Range (Out of Service Area/ Out of Signal Range)

Emission OFF Mode

USIM Lock Active

③ Yahoo! Keitai Mode

Yahoo! Keitai Communication in Progress

Packet Transmission (No Data Transfer)

Connecting to Network for Packet Transmission

/ Packet Transmission (Sending/ Receiving Data)

④ SSL Secured Site Connected

⑤ Unread Messages

Handset Message Memory Full

USIM SMS Memory Full (when there are unread messages)

Handset & USIM SMS Memory Full

⑥ Software Updated

⑦ Dial Lock Active

Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode

Custom Lock Active

Custom Lock Active in Secret Mode/ Secret Data Only Mode

⑧ IC Card Lock Active

⑨ / USB Cable Connected in Communication/microSD Mode

microSD Mode

/ Handsfree Device Connected in Communication/microSD Mode

/ USB Cable & Handsfree Device Connected in Communication/ microSD Mode

⑩ Infrared Transmission

⑪ Memory Card Inserted

Invalid Memory Card Inserted

Write-protect Memory Card Inserted

Memory Card Reader/Writer in Use

Accessing Memory Card

⑫ Voice Call

Video Call

Maximum Call Cost Limit Reached

⑬ Vibration Set for Incoming Calls & Messages

/ Vibration Set for Incoming Calls/Messages

⑭ No Ringtone for Incoming Calls & Messages

/ No Ringtone for Incoming Calls/Messages

⑮ Manner Mode

⑯ Alarm Set

Alarm Set for Today (appears prior to set time.)

⑰ New Messages at Voice Mail Center

⑱ - Voice Messages on Answering Machine

⑲ - Video Messages on Answering Machine

⑳ Backlight Off

Screen Filter On (when Backlight is Off)

㉑ Keypad Lock Active

㉒ Side Key Guard On

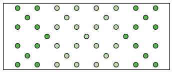
Tip

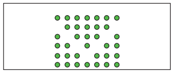
- To see indicator descriptions: ■ ▶▶ *Settings* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Display* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Icons* ▶▶ ■

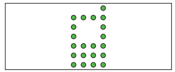
External Display (Illumination Panel)

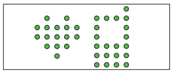
Handset status and new information appear on External Display.

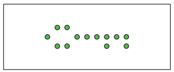
◎Examples

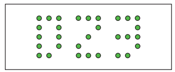

Handset Closed

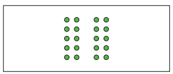

Receiving Message/ New Messages

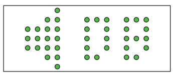

Missed Calls

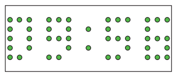

Manner Mode Active


Keypad Lock Active


Track No.


Paused


Volume (Level 8)


Clock Display

Tip

- Illumination Panel is sometimes hard to view outdoors or under strong lighting.

More Features

Customize

Display Settings
- Wallpaper
- Display Color Scheme
- Set Font Type
- Interface Language
- Guard from Prying Eyes

(☛ P. 13-4)

Backlight
- Set Backlight & Power Saving

(☛ P. 13-7)

Standby Indicators
- Enable Indicator Selector

(☛ P. 13-10)

Illumination Panel
- Set Animation
- Clock Pattern
- Show Clock during Charging
- Specify Clock Display Interval

(☛ P. 13-10)

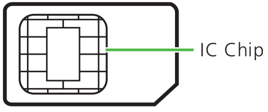
Before Using USIM Card

Universal Subscriber Identity Module (USIM) Card is an IC card that contains SoftBank customer information (phone number, etc.). A USIM Card must be inserted to use your handset.

- Store Phone Book entries and SMS on USIM Card.
- Insert USIM Card into other USIM-compatible SoftBank handsets to use information on Card.
- Do not apply excessive force when inserting/removing USIM Card.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damage caused by inserting USIM Card into other IC card readers/writers.
- USIM Card may become warm during use. This is not a malfunction.
- Keep IC chip clean.
- For details, refer to the manual supplied with your USIM Card.
- Do not drop USIM Card or subject to excessive shock. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Do not bend USIM Card or place heavy objects on it. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Avoid extreme temperatures.
- Do not scratch, carelessly touch or short-circuit the IC chip. Doing so may result in data loss or malfunction.
- Clean USIM Card with a dry soft cloth (such as is used for eyeglasses).
- Use a SoftBank-designated USIM Card. Using a non-designated card may result in handset malfunction.

Other Notes on USIM Cards

- USIM Cards are the property of SoftBank.
- USIM Cards will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM Cards to SoftBank upon cancellation or suspension of service.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications and performance may change without prior notice.
- Keep a separate copy of data saved on your USIM Card. SoftBank is not liable for lost data.
- If USIM Card or handset (with USIM Card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend service immediately. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-48).
- Downloaded files (S! Appli, videos, Saved Pages, etc.) saved to handset or memory card may be inaccessible after USIM Card replacement, handset upgrade or service subscription cancellation. If a different USIM Card is inserted, the cookies and cache are cleared to protect personal information.



USIM PINs

There are two security codes for USIM Cards: PIN and PIN2.

PIN

PIN is a four- to eight-digit code to prevent unauthorized handset use by a third party.

- Default PIN is 9999.
- PIN can be changed (P. 4-2).
- When ***PIN1 code entry set*** is set to ***ON***, PIN must be entered each time handset is turned on to be used.

PIN2

PIN2 is required to reset total call cost or to set a maximum limit to call costs.

- Default PIN2 is 9999.
- PIN2 can be changed (P. 4-2).

PIN Lock & Cancellation (PUK)

If PIN or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, PIN Lock is activated, limiting handset use to specific functions. Enter Personal Unblocking Key (PUK/PUK2) to cancel PIN Lock.

- For information on PUK, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-48).

Note

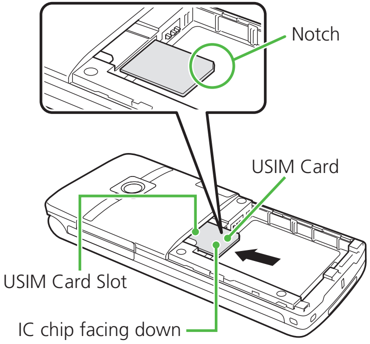
- If PUK is incorrectly entered ten times consecutively, USIM Card is locked and handset is disabled.
- If PUK2 is incorrectly entered ten times consecutively, operations requiring PIN2 entry are all disabled.
- Write down your PUK.
- To cancel USIM Card lock, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-48).

USIM Card Installation

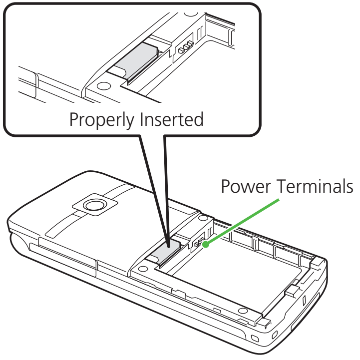
● Remove battery (P. 1-12) before inserting/removing USIM Card.

Insertion

1 **Slide USIM Card in (IC chip facing down)**



2 **Push USIM Card in completely**



Removal

1 **Slide USIM Card out gently**

Notes on Battery Charging

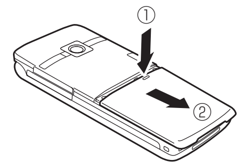
- Charge battery at least once every six months. If battery is left uncharged for a long period, it may become unusable or its operation time may decrease.
- Avoid connecting too many things to one AC outlet. Doing so may cause the AC outlet to overheat and cause a fire.
- Battery and AC Charger may become warm during charging, but this is not a malfunction. If they become too hot, however, stop charging and contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 14-48).
- If Charging Indicator flashes during charging, battery may be faulty. Contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 14-48).
- Check the battery type on its label.
- Depending on the conditions of usage, the battery may expand as it nears the end of its life. However, this presents no safety problems.

Mark	Type
Li-ion00	Lithium-ion battery Lithium-ion batteries are a recyclable resource. Do not dispose of them as municipal waste. Bring used batteries to your nearest SoftBank Shop or recycling center after insulating the terminals with tape. Observe local regulations on battery disposal. Li-ion00

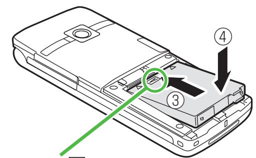
Battery Installation

Insertion

1 Press and slide battery cover off

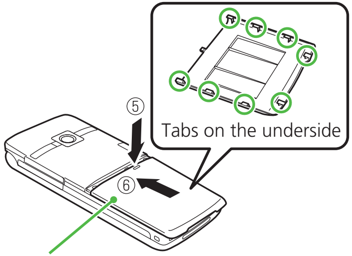


2 Insert battery into place



Insert with the A on the battery and on handset label facing the same way.

3 Replace cover



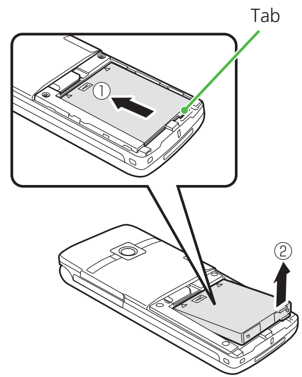
Align tabs with handset grooves and slide the cover shut.

Removal

● Turn off handset before removing battery.

1 Remove battery cover

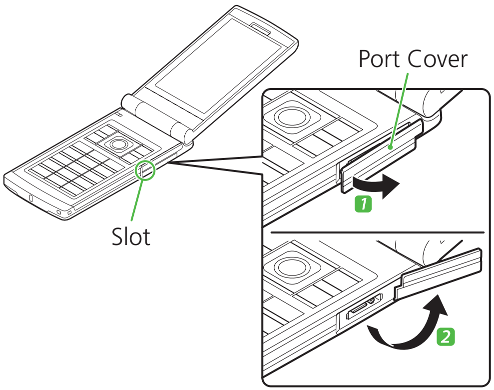
2 Push Tab and lift out



Note

- Do not try to close the battery cover by force without aligning the tabs with handset grooves. Otherwise the tabs may break.

Open Port Cover



1 Pull Port Cover in direction of arrow

2 Rotate in the direction of arrow

- * Using excessive force may cause damage.
- * Keep Cover completely open (as illustrated) while Port is in use.

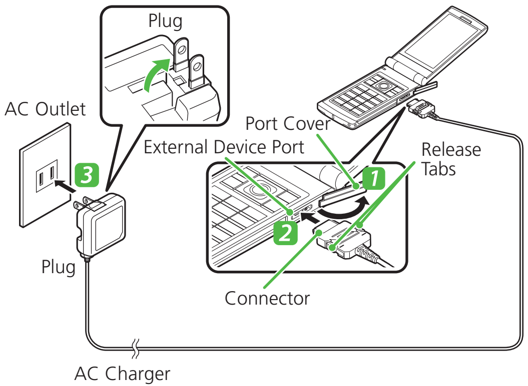
Note

- When handset is connected to an external device, be cautious of Port Cover. Excessive force may damage it.
- Do not close handset onto Port Cover.

Charging Battery

Using AC Charger

Use only SoftBank-specified AC Charger ZTDAA1 (sold separately). In this guide, ZTDAA1 is referred to as "AC Charger".



1 **Open Port Cover**

See P. 1-13 for instructions.

2 **Insert Connector into External Device Port**

3 **Plug AC Charger into an AC Outlet**

Charging Indicator lights while charging. When charging finishes, Charging Indicator goes out.

4 **Disconnect Connector from handset**

Press and hold Release Tabs to remove Connector.

5 **Close Port Cover**

6 **Unplug AC Charger from AC Outlet**

Note

- Battery can only be charged while inserted in handset.
- If Charging Indicator/Display Indicator ▮ go out and *Charge unusual Stop charge* appears, disconnect handset from AC Charger and remove battery. Set up handset and Charger and start charging again. If the same error occurs, AC Charger may be faulty. Contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 14-48).

More Features

Customize

Backlight

❖ Set Backlight during Charging

(☛ P. 13-7)

Power On

● Make sure USIM Card is correctly inserted before turning power on.

1 **Press and hold [⏤]**



Tip

- After USIM Card is replaced, Security code is required when powering handset on for the first time. If Security code is incorrectly entered five times, handset shuts down automatically. Turn handset on again.

◎Powering Handset On for the First Time (Initial Setup)

Setup prompt appears in Japanese. Select *NO* and press [■] to exit.
After changing interface language to English (P. 13-6), restart handset and perform setup procedure as follows.

1 **[Initial Settings] window » *YES* » [■]**

2 ***Auto* » [■] » Select a time zone » [■]**

■To Manually Enter Date & Time
» ***Manual (Date time set)*** » [■] » Select a time zone » [■] » Enter date and time » [■]

3 **Enter Security code (9999) » [■] » Enter new Security code » [■] » *YES* » [■]**

4 **Select a font size » [■]**

■When *Separate setting* is Selected
Set a font size for each function window (P. 13-6).

5 **[Keypad Sound Setting] window » *ON* or *OFF* » [■]**

Tip

- Setup prompt no longer appears when all the initial setup items have been set.
- The default Security code is 9999.

◎Retrieving Network Information

When [✉], [Y!], [⊞] or [■] is pressed after initial setup, a prompt appears. Select *YES* to update network settings.

Tip

- Retrieve network information to use network-related services, such as mail and the Internet.
- To manually update network settings: [■] » *Settings* » [■] » *Connection Settings* » [■] » *Retrieve NW Info* » [■] » *YES* » [■]

◎Welcome Mail

You will find a Welcome mail from CASIO in Inbox at time of purchase.

Tip

- Packet transmission fees apply when accessing links in Welcome mail.
- Welcome mail can be deleted but after initializing handset, it will reappear in Inbox.

Power Off

1 Press and hold [end key]

Handset shuts down.

More Features

Customize

Clock

- 12-hour or 24-hour Clock
- Set Auto Time Adjustment
- Manually Adjust Time
- Summer Time
- Time Zone (Sub Clock)
- Hide Sub Clock
- Summer Time (Sub Clock)

(☛ P. 13-2)

Auto Power On/Off

- Set Auto Power On/Off

(☛ P. 13-3)

Display Settings

- Set a Wake-up Image
- Set a Wake-up Message
- Set Font Sizes Collectively
- Set Font Size for Each Function Window

(☛ P. 13-4)

Sounds

- Set Key Operation Tones

(☛ P. 13-14)

Use your handset responsibly. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn handset power off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from use in restaurants, lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Activating Manner Mode

Most handset sounds are muted in Manner Mode.

1 Press and hold #

■To Cancel Manner Mode

▶▶ Press and hold #

Note

- When your handset is set to vibrate for incoming calls in Manner Mode, be careful not to let it fall off a desk or slide too close to a stove, etc.

Tip

- Shutter click sounds even in Manner Mode.
- Press and hold # to set or cancel Manner Mode during a call. Short beeps sound through the earpiece when Manner Mode is set or canceled during a call.
- Alternatively, press and hold the side key to set/cancel Manner Mode.

More Features

Customize

Manner Mode

❖ Set Manner Mode Type

❖ Configure Original Manner Mode

(☛ P. 13-13)

Security Code, Center Access Code and Network Password are required to use handset.

- Do not reveal these codes to others. Write down your codes.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damage due to handset misuse.

Security Code

Security Code, 9999 by default, is required to use some handset functions. The code can be changed.

- If Security code is entered incorrectly or nothing is entered for 15 seconds, a tone sounds and a message appears. Enter correct Security code.
- Security code is referred to as 操作用暗証番号 (operation code) (Japanese) on the SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (http://www.softbank.jp).

Note

- The warning tone does not sound in Manner Mode or when *Keypad sound* is set to *OFF*.

Changing Security code

1. ■ ➤ ***Settings*** ➤ ■ ➤ ***Security*** ➤ ■ ➤ ***Change security code*** ➤ ■
2. **Enter current Security code** ➤ ■
3. **Enter new Security code** ➤ ■ ➤ ***YES*** ➤ ■

Center Access Code

Center Access Code, a four-digit code assigned at initial subscription, is required to access Optional Services via landlines or to subscribe to fee-based information.

Network Password

Network Password, a four-digit code assigned at initial subscription, is required to use Call Barring.

- If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times, Call Barring settings are locked. Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed.

Checking Battery Level

Use Battery Level meters as a guide only.

Battery Level Indicator

Battery Level indicator appears at top of Display.
Full charge
Partial charge
Charge immediately.

Battery Level Beeper & Large Indicator

Check battery level by number of beeps and large indicator.

1 ■ ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Other Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Battery level*** ▶▶ ■

A large battery level indicator appears. Beeps sound according to the battery level.
3 short beeps: Full charge
2 short beeps: Partial charge
1 short beep: Low charge

Note

- The battery level beeper does not sound in Manner Mode or when *Keypad sound* is set to *OFF*.

◎When Battery Is Empty

Recharge battery appears, the battery alarm sounds for about 10 seconds, and handset powers off in about 60 seconds. Charge battery.

My Phone Number

Check handset phone number.

1 ■ ▶▶ 0

Account Details window appears.

■Add Other Information
▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ *Edit* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter information ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ✉

■View All Information
▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ *Display all data* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ◐ to switch tabs

■Reset Account Details
▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ *Reset* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■

Side Key Guard

Disable ▲ and ▼ while handset is closed.

1 ■ ▶▶ **Press and hold** ✱

Repeat to cancel setting.

Tip

- Alternatively, set Side Key Guard by: ■ ▶▶ *Settings* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Other Settings* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Side key guard* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *ON* or *OFF* ▶▶ ■

Basic Operations

2

Accessing Handset Functions

● In this guide, most operations start from Main Menu.

From Main Menu

Press ■ to open Main Menu. Use ✥ to select an item and press ■ to open sub menus.



Main Menu

Tip

- If the Main Menu is displayed and there is no operation, the Standby Display returns.

Using Softkeys & Multi Selector

Press Softkeys or use Multi Selector in Standby to access assigned functions.

● For key assignment, see P. 1-3.

◎Softkeys

- ✉: Open Mail menu.
- Y!(Press and hold): Open Yahoo! Keitai menu.
- 📷: Activate Camera in Photo mode.

◎Multi Selector

- ▲: Access Shortcuts.
- ▼: Open Phone Book.
- ◀: Access Received Calls.
- ▶: Access Redial.

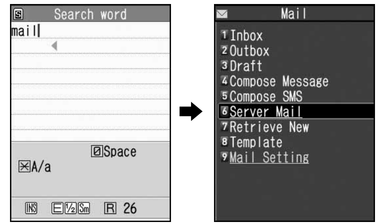
Keyword Search

Enter keywords to search for menu items.

1 ■ ▸▸ 📷

2 **Enter keyword ▸▸ ■**

<Example> Enter "mail"



Corresponding results appear.

3 **Select an item ▸▸ ■**

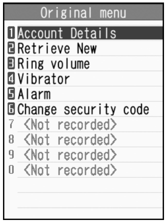
■Toggling Multiple Items

Press Y! to toggle items.

From Original Menu

Assign often-used functions to Original Menu for quick access.

1 [■] ▶▶ [Y!]



Press [Y!] to toggle between Main Menu and Original Menu.

Enter Menu Item Number

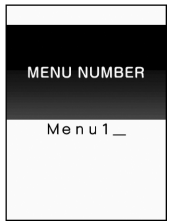
Enter menu item number (P. 14-20) for direct menu access. Note that Main Menu Theme must be set to ***Standard***.

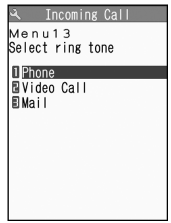
- See P. 2-25 for details on changing Main Menu Theme.

<Example> Access *Select ring tone* (menu no. 13)

1 [■]

2 [1] ▶▶ [3]





Shortcuts/ Notifications

Add phone numbers and functions as Shortcuts to Standby. Notifications appear in Standby to inform you of missed calls, new messages, etc. Select a notification to check the information.

Default Shortcuts:

- S! Quick News List
- Camera (BI-DO-RI)
- TV
- S! Appli (モバイル便利帳 (Mobile Organizer) (Japanese))



◎Functions Available for Shortcuts

* Green border indicates default Shortcuts.

Icon	Function
	S! Quick News List
	Camera (BI-DO-RI)
	TV
	S! Appli
	Call Phone Number
	Compose S! Mail
	Compose SMS
	Access Webpage (Yahoo! Keitai)
	Access Webpage (PC Site Browser)
	Play Melody
	Show Image
	Play Video
	Inbox Folder
	Camera (Photo)
	Camera (Serial) For continuous shooting.
	Camera (Movie)
	Schedule
	To Do List
	Text Memo
	Bar Code Reader
	Text Reader
	Music Player
	Calculator

Icon	Function
	Dictionary
	Receive IR Transmission
	Original Menu

◎Notifications

Icon	Function/Information
Miss	Missed Calls
Msg	Answering Machine Play/delete messages.
Msg	Answering Machine (Video Message) Play/delete Video Messages.
VM	Voice Mail
New	New Messages
Miss	Failed Alarms
ALARM	Missed TV Programs
REC FINISH	Timer Recording Finished
MAX	Maximum Call Cost Limit Reached
UPDATE	Software Update
Get	Content Keys Acquired

* Notifications disappear after accessing the functions/information.

Adding Shortcuts

1 **Open a function » » *Add shortcut icon* »**
Add up to 15 icons.

Accessing Shortcuts/ Notifications

1



Shortcuts

2 **to select an icon »**
Selected function/notification name appears.

■**Scrolling Shortcuts**
»

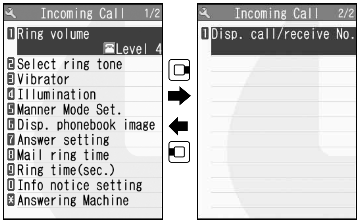
Tip

- Shortcuts can be categorized by "Themes" (e.g. business, friends, family, etc.). Shortcuts are saved to the currently set "Theme" (P. 13-7).

Navigating through Menus

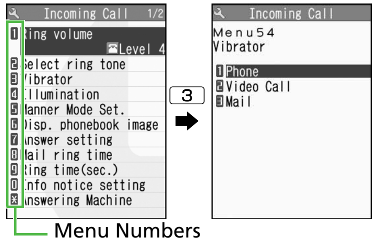
Scrolling Pages

Use ◧, ▲, ◨ or ▼ to scroll next/ previous pages.



Selecting Menu Items Using Keypad

Use keypad to enter number corresponding to menu item.



Undo & Return to Standby

Press クリア to cancel operation and return to previous window.

Press ⌒ to return to Standby.

- There are some exceptions in which pressing クリア/⌒ does not bring you back to the previous window or Standby depending on the window or function.

More Features

Advanced

Main Menu

- Change Main Menu Theme
- Switch to Simple Menu
- Temporarily Change Design Theme of Main Menu

(☛ P. 2-25)

Shortcuts

- Delete Notifications
- Edit Title of a Shortcut
- Change Icon Image
- Check Icon Information
- Change Icon Order
- Delete Shortcuts
- Reset Shortcuts
- Show/Hide Shortcuts

(☛ P. 2-25)

Customize

Menu Display Settings

- Set List View or Details View
- Set Main Menu Theme
- Remember Last Menu Accessed
- Reset Menu Order
- Add a Menu Item to Original Menu

(☛ P. 13-9)

Shortcuts

- Set Shortcut Theme
- Show New Message Indicator as 3D Animation

(☛ P. 13-7)

Activate multiple functions simultaneously to move from one function to another quickly. Select up to three functions, each from a different Function Group (except TV & MUSIC).

Function Group	Function
Mail Group	Mail
Yahoo! Keitai Group	Yahoo! Keitai
S! Appli Group	S! Appli
Settings Group	Settings, Optional Services
Tools Group	Data Folder, Tools, Phone Book, Own Data, Camera
TV & MUSIC Group	TV, MUSIC

- See P. 14-2 for available combinations of functions that can be activated at the same time.
- Currently active functions are indicated by task indicators in Task Indicator Area. To switch to a different function, select the corresponding task indicator.



Task Indicator Area

- Transmission fees are incurred while accessing functions during a voice call.

Activating Another Function

Activate another function without exiting current function.

1 **While using a function »**

2 **» Select another function »**

■Mail Function

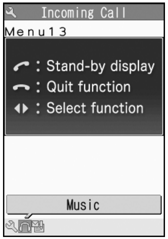
After step 1 »

■To Access Yahoo! Keitai Portal

After step 1 »

Toggling Functions

1 **When multiple functions are active ▶▶**



Task Switch Window

■**Switching Functions**

▶▶ to select a task indicator ▶▶

■**Opening Main Menu**

▶▶

■**Returning to Standby**

▶▶

Press in Standby to reopen Task Switch window.

■**Ending Multitask**

▶▶ ▶▶ ***Quit selected*** or ***Quit all function*** ▶▶

Tip

- Alternatively, press and hold to end Multitask and return to Standby.

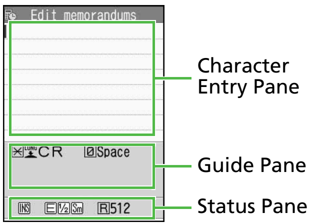
Handset has three text input methods: 5-touch, 2-touch and T9 input.

● This guide mainly explains Japanese text entry in 5-touch mode.

Overview

Text Entry Window

A text entry window consists of Character Entry Pane, Guide Pane and Status Pane. Indicator/key descriptions are as follows:



Text Entry Window

◎Character Entry Pane

|	Cursor
◀	End mark (end of text)

◎Guide Pane

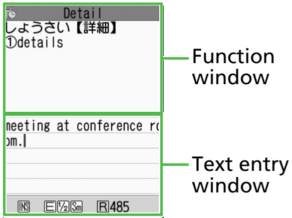
▲▼ CHG	to convert characters
▲▼ All ▲▼ Find	to search Phone Book
◀▶ ▲▼ Area	to specify a text range to copy/cut
CR	Press and hold ✱ to insert line feed
A/a	✱ to switch case of each character, or to add dakuten (゛)/handakuten (゜)
AA→aa	✱ to cancel Caps Lock mode
aa→Aa	✱ to set Shift mode
Aa→AA	✱ to set Caps Lock mode
Back	to cycle characters on a key in reverse order (e.g. え→う)
Space	0 to input a space when entering alphanumerics in 5-touch mode

◎Status Pane

2 T9	Text input method (2-touch/T9 input mode) (No indicator for 5-touch mode)
INS OVR	Insert/Overwrite mode
漢 カ E 123	Character entry mode
⊠	Kuten code input mode (P. 2-27)
1/1 1/2	Double-byte/Single-byte mode
Sm	Lower case input mode
Shift CAPS LOCK	Shift/Caps Lock mode
R	Remaining number of available bytes (1 single-byte character: 1 byte, 1 double-byte character: 2 bytes)
In	Number of entered characters (appears when entering text to USIM Phone Book/SMS message.)

Split Windows

In some instances, a second window appears with text entry window.



Referring to Dictionary from a text entry window

◎Switching Windows

Press [camera] and select *Change window* to switch windows.

Changing Text Input Methods

1 During text entry ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ *CHG input method* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a text input method ▶▶ [■]

Alternatively, press and hold [Y!].

Toggling Character Entry Modes

1 During text entry ▶▶ [Y!]

Press [Y!] to toggle entry modes.
Kanji/hiragana ▶▶ Katakana ▶▶ Alphanumerics ▶▶ Numbers

Tip

- In 2-touch mode, press [Y!] to toggle single-byte and double-byte modes.

About Interruptions to Text Entry

◎When Battery Runs Out

The battery alarm sounds and *Recharge battery* appears. Entered text is automatically saved. Access the same function to continue text entry. Entered text may not be saved depending on the function.

◎When [end key] is Pressed

A message appears asking whether to end text entry. Select *YES* and press [■] to end text entry without saving the text. To continue text entry, select *NO* and press [■].

◎When a Voice Call Arrives

Answer the call. After call ends, text entry window reappears.

Entering Characters in 5-touch Mode

Press a key multiple times to cycle through letters assigned to that key.

● For key assignment, see P. 14-11.

Kanji, Hiragana & Katakana

Enter a reading (in hiragana) and convert to kanji, katakana, etc.

◎Using Word Prediction

Enter a character and Word Prediction suggests words starting with that character. Word Prediction also suggests word selection for words to follow.

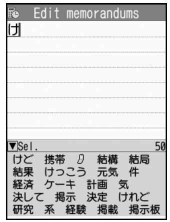
● Switch to kanji/hiragana mode to use word prediction.

<Example> Entering "携帯電話"

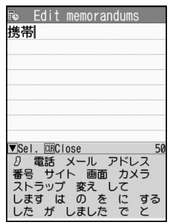
1 During text entry ▶▶ [2] (4 times)

"け" is entered in Character Entry Pane.

Suggestion list shows predictions for words beginning with "け" in Guide Pane.



2 [▽] ▶▶ Select "携帯" ▶▶ [■]



"携帯" appears in Character Entry Pane.

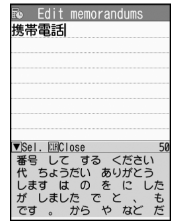
A suggestion list of words that follow "携帯" appears in Guide Pane.

■When Required Word Does Not Appear

▶▶ [クリア]

Continue hiragana (reading) entry in Character Entry Pane to narrow down selection.

3 [▽] ▶▶ Select "電話" ▶▶ [■]



■To Exit Suggestion List

▶▶ [📷]

Tip

• Handset has a learning feature that adds entered words to the suggestion list. Press and hold [クリア] to delete an added word from the suggestion list.

◎Converting Hiragana

If the required suggestion does not appear or word prediction is set to Off, convert to Kanji as shown below:

<Example> Entering "佐々木"

1 During text entry ▶▶ [3] (once) ▶▶ [□] ▶▶ [3] (once) ▶▶ [2] (twice)



■**To Delete Last Input Character**
▶▶ [クリア]

■**To Determine Entered Hiragana without Converting It**
▶▶ [■]

2 [📷] ▶▶ [■]

■**To Reconvert to a Different Word**
▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ Select a word

■**To Change Conversion Range**
▶▶ [◐]

Dakuten (゛) & Handakuten (゜)

<Example> Entering "が"

1 During text entry ▶▶ [2] (once) ▶▶ [＊] ▶▶ [■]

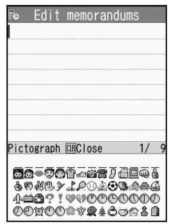
Switching to Lower Case

<Example> Change "つ" to "っ"

1 During text entry ▶▶ [4] (3 times) ▶▶ [＊] ▶▶ [■]

Pictographs & Symbols

1 During text entry ▶▶ [✉]



2 Select a pictograph/symbol ▶▶ [■]

■**To Toggle Pictograph/Symbol Categories**
▶▶ [✉]/[Y!]

■**To Toggle Full-Screen List and Continuous Entry**
▶▶ [📷]

3 [クリア]

The pictograph/symbol list window is closed.

Emoticons

1 During text entry ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Face Mark*** ▶▶ [■]

2 Select an emoticon ▶▶ [■]

Common Phrases (Templates)

1 During text entry ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Common phrases*** ▶▶ [■]

2 Select a folder ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a phrase ▶▶ [■] (twice)

Alphanumerics, Numbers & Katakana

Enter alphanumerics, numbers or katakana in kanji/hiragana input mode.

1 **During text entry » Enter hiragana » ✉ » Select a character » ■**

Editing Text

Deletion & Correction

1 **During text entry » Move cursor to the left of the character to delete » クリア**

■**To Delete All Characters to the Right of Cursor**

» Press and hold クリア

■**To Delete Entire Text**

» Move cursor to the end of text » Press and hold クリア

2 **Position cursor » Enter correct characters**

Copy, Cut & Paste

- Only one entry can be stored on clipboard. If you copy or cut new text, the previously copied or cut text is overwritten.
- Copied or cut text can be pasted repeatedly until you copy or cut new text, or turn handset power off.

1 **During text entry » 📷 » *Copy* or *Cut* » ■**

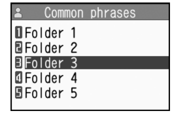
2 **Move cursor to beginning of characters » ■**

3 **Move cursor to end of characters » ■**

4 **Position cursor » 📷 » *Paste* » ■**

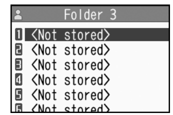
Editing Templates

1 **■ » *Own Data* » ■ » *Common Phrases* » ■**



Templates (Common phrases) window

2 **Select a folder » ■**



Templates List

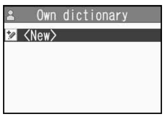
3 **Select an entry » ✉ » Enter text » ■**

Using Dictionaries

Saving Words to Own Dictionary

Save frequently used words to Own Dictionary. For each word, save a reading (in hiragana). When the reading is entered in a text entry window, the word appears among the suggestions.

1 ■ ▶▶ ***Own Data*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Own Dictionary*** ▶▶ ■



Own Dictionary Window

2 ***<New>*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Enter word** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Enter reading** ▶▶ ■

■To Check Saved Words

▶▶ Select a word ▶▶ ■

Entering Characters in 2-touch Mode

Each hiragana character is entered by combining two key presses.

- For combinations of character input keys, see P. 14-12.
- Procedures for selecting predicted words and for converting entered hiragana are the same as those used in 5-touch mode (P. 2-12).

<Example> Entering "キャンプ"

1 [2][2] **(き)** ▶▶ [8][0] **(change to lower case mode)** ▶▶ [8][1] **(ゃ)** ▶▶ [8][0] **(change to upper case mode)** ▶▶ [0][3] **(ん)** ▶▶ [6][3] **(ふ)** ▶▶ [0][5] **(゜)**

2 [📷] ▶▶ ■

Tip

- Pressing [*] also adds dakuten (゛)/handakuten (゜) or toggles upper case and lower case.
- Press [Y!] to toggle double-byte and single-byte modes.

Entering Characters in T9 Input Mode

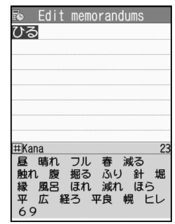
Press a key once for each character, and select the word from the suggestion list.

- For key assignment, see P. 14-13.
- When character entry mode is "Number," 5-touch input method is automatically applied.

<Example> Entering "春"

1 **During text entry** ▶▶ [6] ▶▶ [9]

Word predictions for the key combination appear.



■To Change Conversion Range

▶▶ [◐]

■**Toggle Kanji and Hiragana Suggestion Lists**

▶ [#]

■**Toggle English and Japanese Suggestion Lists**

▶ [Y!]

2 During text entry ▶ [◻] ▶ [✥]

Select word from among the suggestions in Guide Pane.

■**To Show Converted Words on Suggestion List**

▶ [📷]

For example, if you specify "はる", then "張る", "貼る" and other words that have the same reading appear on the suggestion list.

■**To Show Predicted Words on Suggestion List**

▶ [✓]

For example, if you specify "はる", then "春休み", "遥か" and other words that begin with the same reading appear on the suggestion list.

■**To Exit Suggestion List and Continue Character Entry**

▶ [クリア]

3 [■]

Editing Readings

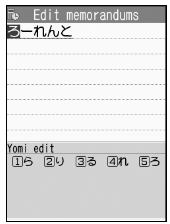
When the desired word does not appear on the suggestion list because its reading is not correctly predicted, edit the reading as shown below.

<Example> Entering "らんらんと"

1 During text entry ▶ [9] (row ら) ▶ [0] (row わ) ▶ [9] (row ら) ▶ [0] (row わ) ▶ [4] (row た)

At this point, the correct word "らんらんと" is not shown on the suggestion list.

2 [✉]



Cursor is on the first character of the reading. The edit reading window opens in Guide Pane, where hiragana characters of row ら are shown.

3 [1] (ら) ▶ [3] (ん) ▶ [1] (ら) ▶ [3] (ん) ▶ [5] (と)



■**If No Correction is Necessary**

▶ [▷] to move cursor to the next character

■**To End Editing Reading**

▶ [✉]

The words predicted/converted from the edited reading appear on the suggestion list.

4 [■]

More Features

Advanced

Text Entry
- Switch between Lower Case & Upper Case
- Switch between Single-byte & Double-byte
- Cycle Characters in Reverse Order
- Undo Last Operation
- Move Cursor to Top/End of Text
- Overwrite & Insert Modes
- Insert Line Feed
- Input a Space
- Use Dictionary
- Quote Text
- Use Kuten Codes

(☛ P. 2-26)

Templates
- Edit a Folder Name
- Reset a Folder Name
- Edit Templates
- Reset Templates

(☛ P. 2-27)

Dictionaries
- Edit Entries
- Delete Entries

(☛ P. 2-28)

Customize

Text Entry
- Set Text Input Method
- Set Word Prediction
- Set T9 Suggestions in Kanji/Hiragana
- Clear Learning History
- Change Font Size

(☛ P. 13-36)

Overview

Save phone numbers, e-mail addresses and other contact information to Phone Book.

Contact Information & Settings

Contact & Personal Information

- Name & Reading
- Group
- 4 Phone Numbers
- 3 E-mail Addresses
- Address
- Birthday
- Memo
- Still Image
- Entry Number

Custom Settings

- Incoming Ringtone
- Incoming Image
- Illumination
- Vibration
- Outgoing Message
- Illumination Panel

Others

- Secret Data

Usage Examples

Speed Dial	Abbreviated dialing for numbers in Phone Book (P. 3-12).
Quick List	Save frequently accessed Phone Book entries to Quick List (P. 3-12).
Reject Calls	Reject calls from phone numbers not saved in Phone Book (P. 4-5).

Search phone numbers or addresses from Phone Book to make calls or write messages.

● **Back Up Important Information**

Keep a separate copy of Phone Book entry information. When battery is exhausted or removed for extended periods, Phone Book data may be lost or altered. Damage to handset may also affect data recovery. SoftBank is not liable for damages from lost/altered Phone Book data.

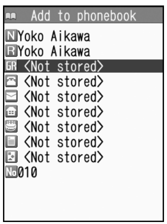
Creating Phone Book Entries

<Example>
Enter a name, phone number and e-mail address, and specify a group

1 ■ » ***Phone Book*** » ■ » 📷 » ***Add to phonebook*** » ■ » ***Phone*** » ■

2 **Enter name » ■ » Check reading » ■**

Reading is entered automatically. Edit as necessary.



Phone Book Entry Window

3 GR » ■ » **Select a group** » ■

4 ☎ » ■ » **Enter phone number » ■ » Select an icon » ■**

■To Save Additional Numbers
Select ☎ ***<Not stored>*** and repeat the same step.

5 ✉ » ■ » **Enter e-mail address » ■ » Select an icon » ■**

■To Save Additional Addresses
Select ✉ ***<Not stored>*** and repeat the same step.

6 ✉

Setting Incoming Image

1 **[Phone Book Entry] window** » 🖼 » ■

2 ***Select image*** » ■ » **Select a folder » ■ » Select a still image » ■**

■To Capture an Image with Camera
» ***Photo mode*** » ■ » Capture image » ■

■To Cancel Selected Image
» ***Release this*** » ■

Creating Entries from Other Functions

Create entries from Received Calls, Dialed Calls, Redial, Received/Sent Address List, Text Reader, Yahoo! Keitai, Phone Number Entry window, etc.

<Example> Create an entry from Received Calls

1 ◧ » **Select a record** » 📷 » ***Add to phonebook*** » ■ » ***Phone*** » ■

2 ***Add*** » ■ » **Search Phone Book » Select an entry » ■ (twice)**

Phone Book Entry window with the phone number automatically entered opens.

■To Save As a New Entry
» ***New*** » ■

3 **Enter other items » ✉ » *YES* » ■**

Resuming Phone Book Edit Operation

If battery is empty or if another function was activated while editing an entry, resume operation as follows:

1 ■ ▶▶ ***Phone Book*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Add to phonebook*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Phone*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Recall*** ▶▶ ■

■To Save As a New Entry
▶▶ ***New*** ▶▶ ■

2 **Enter each item** ▶▶ ✉

Tip

- Save entry before you exit Phone Book. Otherwise, all changes will be lost.

Using Phone Book

Dialing from Phone Book

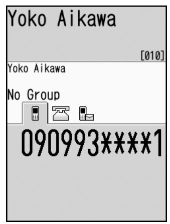
1 ■ ▶▶ ***Phone Book*** ▶▶ ■



Phone Book Entry List

■To Dial the First Phone Number
▶▶ Select an entry ▶▶ ✆

2 ✉/Y! **to switch tabs** ▶▶ ✥ **to select an entry** ▶▶ ■



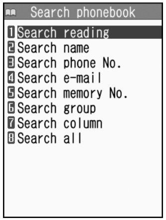
Phone Book Entry Details Window

3 ◇ **to select a phone number** ▶▶ ✆ **or** ■

■Video Call
▶▶ ✉

Specifying a Search Method

1



Phone Book Search Window

2 **Select a search method**

Search reading:
Enter a reading and press .
Search name:
Enter a name and press .
Search phone No.:
Enter a phone number and press .
Search e-mail:
Enter an e-mail address and press .
Search memory No.:
Enter three-digit entry number.
Search group:
Select a group to view saved entries.
Search column:
Press a key (1 - 0 or *) to access the tab corresponding to that key.
Search all:
Phone Book is organized by tabs (Japanese syllabary order).



Phone Book Entry List Window

Tip

- Phone Book entries saved on USIM Card are indicated by .
- Press during a voice call to open Search Group window and to open Search Column window.

Accessing Entries from Other Functions

Access Phone Book entries from Received Calls, Dialed Calls, Redial and Received/Sent Address List.

<Example> Access a Phone Book entry from Received Calls

1 ***Look-up phonebook***

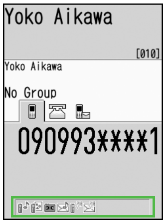
Phone Book Settings

Customizing Handset Response

Set different ringtones, images, etc. per entry item or Group.

◎Indicators

The following indicators appear for set items.



- Ringtone (Incoming Calls)
- Ringtone (Mail)
- Illumination (Incoming Calls)
- Illumination (Mail)
- Vibration (Incoming Calls)
- Vibration (Mail)
- Incoming Image (Calls)
- Outgoing Message (Incoming Calls)
- Illumination Panel (Incoming Calls)
- Illumination Panel (Mail)

◎To Customize by Phone Number/E-mail Address

<Example> Set a ringtone for incoming voice calls

1 **[Phone Book Entry Details] window ▶▶ ◻ to select a phone number ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ *Ring tone/Image* ▶▶ ■**

2 ***Voice call (recv.)* ▶▶ ■**

3 ***Ring tone* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a ringtone type ▶▶ ■ (▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a ringtone ▶▶ ■)**

■To Cancel Custom Settings

▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ ✉

◎To Customize by Group

<Example> Set illumination for incoming messages

1 **[Phone Book Entry List] window ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ *Group setting* ▶▶ ■**

2 **Select a group ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ *Ring tone/Image* ▶▶ ■**

3 ***Mail (recv.)* ▶▶ ■**

4 ***Illumination* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a pattern ▶▶ ■**

■To Cancel Custom Settings

▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ ✉

Note

- *Illumination* and *Illumi* cannot be set at the same time.
- Custom settings are unavailable for secret Phone Book entries.
- Custom Settings are canceled when entry is set as secret.

Restricting Calls to/from Specific Phone Numbers

Restrict calls to/from specific numbers in Phone Book. This can help manage personal calls and prevent nuisance calls.

1 **[Phone Book Entry Details] window ▸▸ ◻ to select a phone number ▸▸ [📷] ▸▸ *Restrictions* ▸▸ [■]**

2 **Enter Security code ▸▸ [■]**

3 **Select a type ▸▸ [■]**

Restrict dialing:
Restrict outgoing calls to all numbers except a specified number. To call that number, you need to dial from Phone Book.

Call rejection:
Restrict incoming calls from a specified number.

Call acceptation:
Receive incoming calls only from a specified number.

■To Cancel

▸▸ Select current setting (item with ★) ▸▸ [■]

◎When *Restrict dialing* is Set

The following operations are disabled:
Dialing by direct number entry on Keypad, dialing from Received Calls, and manipulating Phone Book data other than calling the specified number in Phone Book.

Tip

- When *Restrict dialing* is set, all records on Redial, Dialed Calls and Sent Address List are deleted.
- You can call emergency numbers 110, 119 and 118 even when *Restrict dialing* is set.
- If you change or delete the set number, *Call rejection* and *Call acceptation* are cancelled. You cannot edit or delete when *Restrict dialing* is set.

Setting Entries as Secret

Prevent others from accessing certain Phone Book entries by setting them as secret data.

● Phone Book entries set as secret are only shown in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode (P. 4-6).

1 **[Phone Book Entry Details] window ▸▸ [📷] ▸▸ *Set secret* ▸▸ [■]**

■To Cancel Secret Setting

▸▸ ***Release secret*** ▸▸ [■]

Available in Secret Mode or in Secret Data Only Mode.

Tip

- Phone Book entries saved in Secret Mode or in Secret Data Only Mode are automatically set as secret.
- If a Phone Book entry that has been saved to Quick List is set as secret, the entry is canceled from Quick List.

Managing USIM Phone Book

Phone Book entries can be copied between handset and USIM Card.

1 **[■] ▸▸ *Tools* ▸▸ [■] ▸▸ *USIM Operation* ▸▸ [■] ▸▸ Enter Security code ▸▸ [■]**

2 ***Copy*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Phone→USIM*** or ***USIM→Phone*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Phonebook*** ▶▶ ■

3 **Search Phone Book**

4 **Select an entry** ▶▶ ■

Repeat this step to specify other entries.

5 ✉ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

Note

- Items that cannot be saved to USIM Phone Book are not copied.
- Phone Book entries set as secret cannot be copied.
- While Phone Book entries are being copied, you cannot make/receive calls or send/receive messages.

More Features

Advanced

Creating Entries

- Save a Postal Code, Address, Birthday & Memo
- Change Entry Number

(☛ P. 2-28)

Phone Book Search

- Change Index Tab of Phone Book Entry List Window
- Change Font Size
- Change Phone Number/E-mail Address Order
- Compose S! Mail from Phone Book
- Compose SMS from Phone Book

(☛ P. 2-28)

Managing Phone Book

- Check Custom Ringtone/Image Settings
- Cancel Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item
- Check Restriction Settings by Restriction Type
- Cancel Restriction Settings by Restriction Type
- Check Number of Phone Book Entries
- Edit a Phone Book Entry
- Copy a Phone Book Entry
- Delete Entries
- Delete Items from an Entry
- Delete an Entry from USIM Card

(☛ P. 2-29)

Customize

Phone Book

- Set Preferred Search Method
- Change Group Name

(☛ P. 13-16)

Main Menu

Start Here

【Main Menu】 .... P. 2-2

Change Main Menu Theme

【Main Menu】 ▶▶ ✉ ▶▶ Select a pattern ▶▶ ■

Switch to Simple Menu

【Main Menu】 ▶▶ ✉ ▶▶ ***Simple Menu*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ▶▶ ■

Simple Menu, which is shown in large font and is made up of only typically used menu items, facilitates menu operations.

Temporarily Change Design Theme of Main Menu

【Main Menu】 ▶▶ ✉ ▶▶ Select a theme ▶▶ ✉

Next time you open Main Menu, default Main Menu returns.

Shortcuts

Delete Notifications

Press and hold クリア

Some notifications may not disappear depending on the type.

Edit Title of a Shortcut

▯ ▶▶ Select an icon ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Edit title*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter title ▶▶ ■

Change Icon Image

▯ ▶▶ Select an icon ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***CHG icon image*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Select icon image*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a file ▶▶ ■

To reset icon image, select *Default icon image* and press ■.

Check Icon Information

▯ ▶▶ Select an icon ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Icon info setting*** ▶▶ ■

Change Icon Order

▯ ▶▶ Select an icon ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Sort*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ◫ to select a position ▶▶ ■

Delete Shortcuts

▯ ▶▶ Select an icon ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Delete*** ▶▶ ■

- To Select *Delete this*
  ▶▶ *Delete this* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■
- To Select *Delete selected*
  ▶▶ *Delete selected* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select icons ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ✉ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■
- To Select *Delete all*
  ▶▶ *Delete all* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■

Reset Shortcuts

▯ ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Reset Shortcut*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

Show/Hide Shortcuts

▶▶ ▶▶ ***Display setting*** ▶▶ ▶▶ ***Display always*** or ***Display at use*** ▶▶ (▶▶)

When ***Display at use*** is set, shortcuts only appear when you press in Standby.

Text Entry

Start Here

【Text Entry】 window .... P. 2-10

Switch between Lower Case & Upper Case

【Text Entry】 window ▶▶ ▶▶ ***Lower case*** or ***Upper case*** ▶▶

Switch between Single-byte & Double-byte

【Text Entry】 window ▶▶ ▶▶ ***Single-byte*** or ***Double-byte*** ▶▶

Cycle Characters in Reverse Order

【Text Entry】 window ▶▶ Input a character ▶▶

Available in 5-touch mode.

Undo Last Operation

【Text Entry】 window ▶▶ Press and hold

Move Cursor to Top/End of Text

【Text Entry】 window ▶▶ ▶▶ ***Jump*** ▶▶ ▶▶ ***To beginning*** or ***To end*** ▶▶

Overwrite & Insert Modes

【Text Entry】 window ▶▶ ▶▶ ***Overwrite*** or ***Insert*** ▶▶

Text entry windows always open in ***Insert*** mode.

Available when editing Text Memo.

Insert Line Feed

【Text Entry】 window ▶▶ Press and hold

Press to add a space at the end of text.

Input a Space

【Text Entry】 window ▶▶ ▶▶ ***Space*** ▶▶

Press to add a space at the end of text.

Use Dictionary

【Text Entry】 window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Refer dic.*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Enter word*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter word ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a dictionary ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a word ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Read descriptions of the word

- To Enter a Word from Search History
  ▶▶ ***Reference history*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a word ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a dictionary ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a word ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Read descriptions of the word

Quote Text

【Text Entry】 window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Quote data*** ▶▶ [■]

- To Quote from a Phone Book Entry
  ▶▶ ***Quote phonebook*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Search Phone Book ▶▶ Select a data item to quote text from ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [mail]
- To Quote from Account Details
  ▶▶ ***Account Details*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a data item ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [mail]
- To Scan Text by Text Reader
  ▶▶ ***Text reader*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Scan text with camera ▶▶ [mail]
- To Scan Bar Code by Bar Code Reader
  ▶▶ ***Bar code reader*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Scan a bar code with camera ▶▶ [■]

Use Kuten Codes

【Text Entry】 window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Kuten code*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter kuten codes (P. 14-14)

Templates

Start Here

Edit a Folder Name

【Templates (Common phrases)】 window ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Edit folder name*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter folder name ▶▶ [■]

Reset a Folder Name

【Templates (Common phrases)】 window ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Reset name*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

Edit Templates

【Templates List】 ▶▶ Select a template ▶▶ [mail] ▶▶ Edit phrase ▶▶ [■]

Reset Templates

【Templates List】 ▶▶ Select a template ▶▶ [📷]
- To Select *Delete this* ▶▶ *Delete this* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]
- To Select *Delete all* ▶▶ *Delete all* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]

Dictionaries

Start Here

【Own Dictionary】 window .... P. 2-15

Edit Entries

【Own Dictionary】 window ▶▶ Select an entry ▶▶ [✉] ▶▶ Edit word ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Edit reading ▶▶ [■]

Delete Entries

【Own Dictionary】 window ▶▶ Select an entry ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Delete*** ▶▶ [■]
- To Select *Delete this* ▶▶ *Delete this* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]
- To Select *Delete selected* ▶▶ *Delete selected* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select entries ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [✉] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]
- To Select *Delete all* ▶▶ *Delete all* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]

Phone Book

Start Here

【Phone Book Entry】 window.... P. 2-19
【Phone Book Entry List】 window .... P. 2-20
【Phone Book Entry Details】 window .... P. 2-20
【Phone Book Search】 window .... P. 2-21

Creating Entries

Save a Postal Code, Address, Birthday & Memo

【Phone Book Entry】 window ▶▶ [🏠], [🎂] or [📄] ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter content ▶▶ [■]

Change Entry Number

【Phone Book Entry】 window ▶▶ [No] ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Change entry number ▶▶ [■]

Phone Book Search

Change Index Tab of Phone Book Entry List Window

【Phone Book Entry List】 window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Change Display*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Alphabet***, ***Memory No.*** or ***Group*** ▶▶ [■]

Change Font Size

【Phone Book Entry List】 window/【Phone Book Entry Details】 window ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Big font*** or ***Standard font*** ▶▶ ■

Change Phone Number/E-mail Address Order

【Phone Book Entry Details】 window ▶▶Select a phone number/e-mail address ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Move to top*** ▶▶ ■

Available when more than one phone number/e-mail address is saved to a Phone Book entry.

Compose S! Mail from Phone Book

【Phone Book Entry Details】 window ▶▶ ◫ to select an e-mail address ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Compose S! Mail

Compose SMS from Phone Book

【Phone Book Entry Details】 window ▶▶ ◫ to select a phone number ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Compose SMS*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Compose SMS message

Managing Phone Book

Check Custom Ringtone/Image Settings

【Phone Book Entry List】 window ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Ring tone/Image*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an item with ★ ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an item with ★ ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Check settings*** ▶▶ ■

Cancel Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item

【Phone Book Entry List】 window ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Ring tone/Image*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an item with ★ ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an item with ★ ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Release settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

Check Restriction Settings by Restriction Type

【Phone Book Entry List】 window ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Restrictions*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a restriction type with ★ ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Check settings*** ▶▶ ■

Cancel Restriction Settings by Restriction Type

【Phone Book Entry List】 window ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Restrictions*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a restriction type with ★ ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Release settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

Check Number of Phone Book Entries

【Phone Book Entry List】 window ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***No. of phonebook*** ▶▶ ■

Edit a Phone Book Entry

【Phone Book Entry Details】 window ▶▶ [camera key] ▶▶ ***Edit phonebook*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Edit each item ▶▶ [mail key] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

- To Save as a New Entry
  ▶▶ [No] ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter entry number
  The edited entry is saved as a new entry and the original entry remains the same as before.

Copy a Phone Book Entry

【Phone Book Entry Details】 window ▶▶ [camera key] ▶▶ ***Copy to USIM*** or ***Copy from USIM*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

Delete Entries

【Phone Book Entry List】 window ▶▶ Select an entry ▶▶ [camera key] ▶▶ ***Delete data*** ▶▶ ■

- To Select *Delete this*
  ▶▶ *Delete this* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■
- To Select *Delete selected*
  ▶▶ *Delete selected* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select entries ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ [mail key] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■
- To Select *Delete all*
  ▶▶ *Delete all* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■

Delete Items from an Entry

【Phone Book Entry Details】 window ▶▶ [navigation key] to select an item ▶▶ [camera key] ▶▶ ***Delete data*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Delete phone No., Delete mail add., Delete address, Delete birthday, Delete memorandums, Delete image*** or ***Delete this*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

Delete an Entry from USIM Card

■ ▶▶ ***Tools*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***USIM Operation*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Delete*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***USIM*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Phonebook*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Search Phone Book ▶▶ Select an entry ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ [mail key] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

Calling

3

Voice call and video call are available on handset.

Voice Call

Make Calls to:

- SoftBank Handsets
- Non-SoftBank Mobile Phones
- Landlines

Video Call

Make Calls to:

- SoftBank Handsets
- Non-SoftBank Mobile Phones
- Landlines

Other party must use a video call compatible phone

International Call

Calling Abroad from Japan

Make/receive voice and video calls. (Prior application may be required.)

Global Roaming

Using Handset Abroad

Handset is Global Roaming Service eligible. (Prior application may be required.)

•For details of service and eligible countries and regions, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (http://www.softbank.jp), or contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-48).

Emergency Calls

Your location is automatically reported to the corresponding agency (police, etc.) when you place emergency calls (110, 119, or 118) with Softbank 3G handsets.
(Emergency Location Report)
830CA reports Location Information based on positioning signals from radio stations.

- Registration/transmission fees do not apply.
- Positioning accuracy is affected by location/signal conditions. Always provide your location and purpose on the phone.
- Location Information is not reported when emergency calls are placed without Caller ID (such as when the number is prefixed with 184). However, the corresponding agency may obtain your Location Information in a life threatening situation.
- Not available during international roaming.

Emergency calls are possible even while some handset restrictions are active.

Restrict dialing (P.2-23) Keypad lock (P.4-4) Set Max Cost Limit (P.13-18) Emission OFF Mode (P.4-5) PIN1 code entry set (P.4-2)	Possible

Making Voice Calls

1 **Enter phone number**



Phone Number Entry Window

■**Correcting Misentries**
» to scroll cursor » Reenter number(s)

■**Deleting Numbers**
» to select a number » クリア

■**Deleting Phone Number**
» to select the first or last number » Press and hold クリア

2



Voice Call Window

3 **to end call**

Tip

- Always include the area code even when dialing from the same area.
- When you hear a busy tone, the other party is on another line.
- When you hear a message saying that the other party cannot be reached, the other party's mobile phone is off or is out of signal range.
- When you hear a message asking for your caller ID, call again with your number revealed.
- After Display backlight turns off during a call, if no keys are pressed for about two minutes, Display goes off and handset enters power saving mode regardless of Lighting setting for Backlight (P. 13-7). Handset can be operated in power saving mode in the same way as when Display is lit.

Available Keys during Voice Calls

Adjust Earpiece Volume	/ or press and hold
Hold Call	クリア

International Calls

● International Call Service may require prior application.

1 **Enter phone number** » » ***Int'l call*** »

2 **Select a country code** » » **Select an international prefix number** » »

3 **to end call**

Answering Voice Calls

1 **When a call arrives** »

2 **to end call**

Answering Machine

Record callers' messages on handset when you are unable to answer voice/video calls.

● Answering Machine is unavailable when handset power is off, out-of-range or in Emission OFF (offline) Mode.

Setting Answering Machine

1 ■ ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Incoming Call*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Answering Machine*** ▶▶ ■

2 ***ON*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Select an outgoing message** ▶▶ ■

3 **Enter ring time**

Tip

- When Voice Mail or Call Forwarding is activated, set a shorter ring time for Answering Machine than that for Voice Mail or Call Forwarding.

◎When a Call Arrives

Answering Machine activates after the set ring time. Outgoing message plays, and the caller's voice/video message is recorded.

Handset returns to Standby when recording is complete. Answering Machine notification and Display indicator appear. The indicator shows the number of messages.

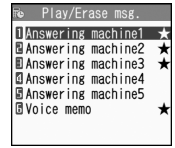


■To Answer Call during Recording

▶▶ ✓

Playing Messages

1 ◻ ▶▶ **Select notification** Msg **or** Msg ▶▶ ■



Play/Delete Voice Message Window

Items with a message recorded are indicated by ★.

2 **Select a message** ▶▶ ■

■To Delete a Message While Playing it

▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Erase*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

Available Keys during Playback

Play Next Message	▼
Stop	■/クリア
Return a Voice Call	✓
Return a Video Call	✉

Tip

- Pressing ▼ in Standby also plays recorded voice messages.
- To play voice messages from Main Menu:
  ■ ▶▶ *Tools* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Play/Erase Msg.* ▶▶ ■

Available Keys during Video Message Playback

Play Previous/Next Message	◀▶
Adjust Volume	▲▼ or ▲/▼
Pause/Play	■
Stop	クリア
Return a Voice Call	✓
Return a Video Call	✉

Tip

- To play video messages from Main Menu:
  ■ ▶▶ *Tools* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Play/Erase VC Msg.* ▶▶ ■

Activate When Call Arrives

Activate Answering Machine when unable to answer an incoming call. Answering Machine setting returns, after message is recorded.

1 When a call arrives ▶▶ ▼

Answering Machine is activated and starts recording.

■To Activate Manner Mode at the Same Time

▶▶ When a call arrives ▶▶ #

Note

- Answering Machine cannot be activated when memory is full.

More Features

Advanced

Outgoing Call Functions

- Show/Hide Caller ID
- Adjust Earpiece (Speaker) Volume in Advance
- Add Area Code and Country Code (Prefix Numbers)

(☞ P. 3-16)

International Calls

- Enter "+" to Call Abroad

(☞ P. 3-16)

Handling Incoming Calls

- Reject Calls
- Place Calls on Hold
- Forward Calls
- Forward Calls to Voice Mail Center

(☞ P. 3-17)

Engaged Call Operations

- Handsfree
- Send Touch Tones

(☞ P. 3-17)

Answering Machine

- Delete Recorded Messages

(☞ P. 3-18)

Customize

Outgoing Calls

- Save Area Code and Country Code as Prefix Numbers
- Save Touch Tones
- Set Numbers after "✱" as Sub Address

(☛ P. 13-16)

Display Settings

- Set an Outgoing Call Image

(☛ P. 13-4)

International Calls

- Change International Access Code Automatically Dialed with " + "
- Change a Country Code
- Save an International Access Code

(☛ P. 13-17)

Incoming Call Alerts

- Adjust Ringtone Volume
- Set a Ringtone
- Set Vibration
- Set Illumination Color
- Set an Incoming Call Image
- Show Phone Book Entry Images for Incoming Calls

(☛ P. 13-11)

Answering Incoming Calls

- Set to Answer Calls by Pressing Any Key
- Set to Mute Ringtone by Pressing Any Key

(☛ P. 13-12)

Call Settings

- Set Reconnection Tone
- Set Noise Reduction
- Set Weak Signal Alarm
- Set Illumination Color for Incoming Calls during Calls
- Set to Mute by Closing Handset
- Set to End Call by Closing Handset
- Set a Hold Message

(☛ P. 13-17)

Video Call Window



Video Call Indicators

A A	Transmitting Audio/ Transmission Failed
V V	Transmitting Video/ Transmission Failed
	Sending Camera Image/ Substitute Image
	Handsfree On/Off
MUTE	Muting
	Photo Mode (Portrait/Scenery/ Accessories)

Making Video Calls

1 **Enter phone number**



Phone Number Entry Window

■**Correcting Misentries**

▶▶ [navigation key] to scroll cursor ▶▶ Reenter number(s)

■**Deleting Numbers**

▶▶ [navigation key] to select a number ▶▶ [クリア]

Press and hold [クリア] to delete all numbers to the left of the selected number.

■**Deleting Phone Number**

▶▶ [navigation key] to select the first or last number ▶▶ Press and hold [クリア]

2 [✉]



Video Call Window

3 [end key] **to end call**

Tip

- Always include the area code even when dialing from the same area.
- Video calls made to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) are automatically switched to voice calls.
- An error message with a possible cause appears when a video call fails to be connected.
- Handset is not equipped with an internal camera thus image sent to other party is the substitute image or external camera image.
- Charging battery and using TV during a video call may cause handset to become warm. If this happens, outgoing image may switch to substitute image.

Available Keys during Video Calls

Adjust Earpiece (Speaker) Volume	[side key] or [▲]/[▼]
Hold Call	[クリア]
Toggle Substitute Image/Camera Image	[■]
Toggle Main Window Images	Press and hold [■] • Toggles as follows: Other party's image → Your image → Other party's image (sub window off) → Your image (sub window off)
Zoom In/Out Outgoing Camera Image	[key]
Mute Audio	Press and hold [▲]. • To cancel mute, press and hold [▲] again.

Answering Video Calls

1 **When a video call arrives** ▶▶ [start key]

2 [end key] **to end call**

More Features

Advanced

Outgoing Call Functions
- Show/Hide Caller ID
- Adjust Earpiece (Speaker) Volume in Advance
- Add Area Code and Country Code (Prefix Numbers)

(☛ P. 3-16)

Handling Incoming Calls
- Reject Calls
- Place Calls on Hold
- Forward Calls

(☛ P. 3-17)

Engaged Call Operations

- Handsfree
- Set Image Quality
- Adjust Brightness
- Change White Balance
- Change Color Tone
- Change Photo Mode
- Backlight Lighting Time

(☛ P. 3-17)

Customize

Outgoing Calls

- Save Area Code and Country Code as Prefix Numbers
- Set Numbers after "✳" as Sub Address

(☛ P. 13-16)

Display Settings

- Set an Outgoing Call Image

(☛ P. 13-4)

Incoming Call Alerts

- Adjust Ringtone Volume
- Set a Ringtone
- Set Vibration
- Set Illumination Color
- Set an Incoming Call Image
- Show Phone Book Entry Images for Incoming Calls

(☛ P. 13-11)

Call Settings

- Set Reconnection Tone
- Set Noise Reduction
- Set Weak Signal Alarm
- Set Illumination Color for Incoming Calls during Calls
- Set to Mute by Closing Handset
- Set to End Call by Closing Handset
- Set a Hold Message

(☛ P. 13-17)

Video Calls

- Set an Image to be Sent during Video Calls
- Redial Automatically as Voice Call When Video Call Connection Fails
- Set an Image to Appear in Main Window
- Automatically Switch to Handsfree Mode in Video Calls

(☛ P. 13-19)

Dialing from Call Logs

Phone numbers and dates and times of incoming/outgoing calls are saved on handset as call logs. Access call logs to return calls quickly.

Call Log Indicators

The following indicators appear in Redial, Dialed Calls and Received Calls windows to indicate call log types.

PHONE / MISS / MISS	Voice Calls: Outgoing & Incoming/ Missed/Unchecked Missed
INT PHONE / INT MISS / INT MISS	International Calls: Outgoing & Incoming/ Missed/Unchecked Missed
PHONE / MISS / MISS	Video Calls: Outgoing & Incoming/ Missed/Unchecked Missed
INT PHONE / INT MISS / INT MISS	International Video Calls: Outgoing & Incoming/ Missed/Unchecked Missed
MSG / MSG	Answering Machine: Voice Messages/Video Messages
PACKET	Packet Transmission
GMT	Outgoing & Incoming Calls in a time zone other than *GMT+09* with the summer time setting reflected regardless of *Auto time adjust* setting.

Redial/Received Calls

1 ■/■



Redial Window



Received Calls Window

2 **Select a record** ▶▶ ✓/✉

■To Check Details of a Record

▶▶ Select a record ▶▶ ■

Dialed Calls

1 ■ ▶▶ ***Own Data*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Dialed Calls*** ▶▶ ■



Dialed Calls Window

2 **Select a record** ▶▶ ✓/✉

■To Check Details of a Record

▶▶ Select a record ▶▶ ■

Checking Number of Missed Calls

1 ■ ▸▸ ***Own Data*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Received Calls*** ▸▸ ■

The total number of incoming calls, number of missed calls, and number of unchecked missed calls are shown.

2 ***All calls*** or ***Missed calls*** ▸▸ ■

◎Unchecked Missed Calls

Illumination flashes.

Press ▼ while handset is closed to check missed calls by beeps or vibration.

Status	Manner Mode Off	Manner Mode On
Missed call(s) or New messages	beep-beep, beep-beep	Long vibration
No missed call or new message	beep-beep-beep	Short vibration

Illumination goes out when you have checked all the missed calls, or when you press and hold クリア.

Call Time & Cost

Check the total and last call times and costs.

Call cost and cost limit may be unavailable depending on your subscription.

1 ■ ▸▸ ***Settings*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Call Time/Charge*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Call data*** ▸▸ ■

Tip

- Use indicated call times and costs only as a guide. The actual call time and cost may be different. Your handset may not indicate call costs depending on the service you subscribe. Indicated costs do not include consumption tax.
- When the last or total call time exceeds 199 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds, counting is reset to 0 seconds and restarts.

More Features

Advanced

Redial, Dialed Calls & Received Calls

- Change Font Size
- Show Ring Time (Missed Calls)
- Delete Records

(☞ P. 3-18)

Call Time & Cost

- Reset Total Call Time
- Reset Total Call Cost

(☞ P. 3-19)

Customize

Checking Call Logs

- Emit Beeps to Notify of Missed Calls When ▼ is Pressed
- Change Colors of Names/Phone Numbers in Call Log Windows

(☞ P. 13-13)

Call Costs

- Set Auto Reset of Total Call Cost
- Set/Cancel a Maximum Call Cost Limit

(☞ P. 13-18)

Abbreviated Dialing

Just press a number key from [0] to [9] and then [call key] to call Phone Book entries with entry numbers 000 to 009.

- If a Phone Book entry has more than one phone number, handset dials the first number.

1 [0] **to** [9] ▸▸ [call key]/[mail key]

Dialing from Quick List

Save frequently accessed Phone Book entries to Quick List to quickly make calls or send messages.

- Quick List is unavailable in Secret Data Only Mode.
- Although Quick List is available in Secret Mode, secret Phone Book entries cannot be saved to Quick List.

Saving Entries to Quick List

1 [■] ▸▸ ***Own Data*** ▸▸ [■] ▸▸ ***Quick List*** ▸▸ [■]



Quick List Window

2 [◀▶] **to select a tab** ▸▸ [mail key] ▸▸ **Search Phone Book** ▸▸ **Select an entry** ▸▸ [■]

3 **Select a phone number/ e-mail address** ▸▸ [■]

When a checkbox is selected, other numbers/addresses become grayed and cannot be selected. To select another number/address, first cancel the currently selected checkbox.

4 [mail key]

Dialing/Sending Messages from Quick List

1 [■] ▸▸ ***Own Data*** ▸▸ [■] ▸▸ ***Quick List*** ▸▸ [■]

2 [◀▶] **to select an entry** ▸▸ ***CALL*, *MAIL* or *VIDEO CALL*** ▸▸ [■]

■**To Send an S! Mail to All Quick List Entries**

▸▸ [camera key] ▸▸ ***Broadcast mail*** ▸▸ [■] ▸▸ Compose S! Mail

More Features

Advanced

Speed Dial

- Cancel Entries from Quick List
- Change Quick List Entry Image

(☛ P. 3-19)

Make calls while overseas.

- Handset can be used in 3G roaming areas. It cannot be used in GSM/GPRS service areas. For details of service and eligible countries and regions, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (http://www.softbank.jp), or contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-48).
- Global Roaming Service may require prior application.

Calling Japan and Other Countries

1 Press and hold 0

"+" is entered.

2 Enter country code and phone number with area code (excluding the first "0") ▶ ✆

Tip

- Do not omit the first "0" from area code when calling Italy.

Calling within the Same Country

1 Enter phone number with area code ▶ ✆

- Do not omit "0" from area code.
- Country code not required.

More Features

Customize

Global Roaming

- Set Operator
- Search Available Operator
- Set Priority for Operators
- Show Operator Name While Roaming

(☛ P. 13-20)

Overview

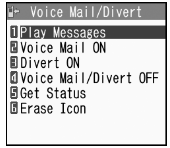
Call Forwarding	Forward calls to a preset phone number.
Voice Mail	Forward calls to Voice Mail Center when you cannot answer calls. **Missed Call Notification** Notification (SMS) arrives for missed calls while handset was off, out of range or engaged, etc.
Call Waiting*	Place the current call on hold to answer another incoming call. Talk with two parties alternately.
Group Calling*	Call others during a call and talk with multiple parties simultaneously.
Call Barring	Restrict incoming/outgoing calls and SMS.
Caller ID	Show or hide your number when making calls.

* Separate application is required.

Activating Call Forwarding

<Example> Forward calls to a specified number after a set ring time

1 ■ ▶ ***Optional Services*** ▶ ■ ▶ ***Voice Mail/Divert*** ▶ ■



Voice Mail/Divert Window

2 ***Divert ON*** ▶ ■ ▶ ***YES*** ▶ ■ ▶ ***Voice/Video Calls, Voice Calls*** **or** ***Video Calls*** ▶ ■ ▶ **Enter phone number**

■To Search from Phone Book

▶ [navigation key] to select a search method ▶ ■ ▶ Search Phone Book ▶ Select an entry ▶ ■ ▶ Select a phone number ▶ ■

3 ■ ▶ ***No Answer*** ▶ ■ ▶ **Select a ring time** ▶ ■

■To Forward Calls Immediately

▶ ***Always*** ▶ ■

Tip

- If *No Answer* is set, press [key] to answer incoming call before the call is forwarded. If *Always* is set, handset does not ring/vibrate and all calls are forwarded to the preset number.
- Call Forwarding and Voice Mail cannot be set simultaneously. Call Forwarding for video calls is only available with Voice Mail.
- If you activate Call Forwarding when Voice Mail has already been set, Voice Mail is canceled.

Activating Voice Mail

<Example> **Forward calls to Voice Mail Center after a set ring time**

1 [Voice Mail/Divert] window ▶▶ ***Voice Mail ON*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

2 ***No Answer*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Select a ring time** ▶▶ ■

■To Forward Calls to Voice Mail Center Immediately

▶▶ ***Always*** ▶▶ ■

Tip

- If *No Answer* is set, press [key] to answer incoming call before the call is forwarded to Voice Mail Center. If *Always* is set, handset does not ring/ vibrate and all calls are forwarded to Voice Mail Center.
- Voice Mail and Call Forwarding cannot be set simultaneously. Voice Mail is only available with Call Forwarding for video calls.
- If you activate Voice Mail when Call Forwarding has already been set, Call Forwarding is canceled.

◎Missed Call Notification

SMS notification informs you of missed calls while handset was off, out of range, engaged, etc.

1 1 4 1 4 [key]

Follow voice guidance.

◎To Play Messages

1 [Voice Mail/Divert] window ▶▶ ***Play Messages*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

Canceling Call Forwarding/ Voice Mail

1 [Voice Mail/Divert] window ▶▶ ***Voice Mail/Divert OFF*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

More Features

Advanced

Call Forwarding & Voice Mail

- ❖ Delete Desktop Notifications for Recorded Messages
- ❖ Check Current Setting Status

(☛ P. 3-20)

Call Waiting

- ❖ Set Call Waiting
- ❖ Answer Incoming Calls during Calls
- ❖ Check Current Setting Status

(☛ P. 3-20)

Group Calling

- ❖ Hold Current Call to Make Another Call
- ❖ Switch Parties
- ❖ Talk with Multiple Parties Simultaneously
- ❖ Talk with a Specific Party
- ❖ End Call with a Specific Party

(☛ P. 3-20)

Call Barring

- ❖ Restrict Incoming/Outgoing Calls & SMS
- ❖ Cancel Call Barring
- ❖ Change Network Password
- ❖ Check Current Setting Status

(☛ P. 3-21)

Caller ID

- ❖ Show/Hide Phone Number
- ❖ Check Current Setting Status

(☛ P. 3-21)

Outgoing Call Functions

Start Here

【Phone Number Entry】window .... P. 3-3, P. 3-7

Show/Hide Caller ID

【Phone Number Entry】window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ *Notify Caller ID* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *OFF, ON* or *Cancel prefix* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [call]/[mail]

- Alternatively, enter "186" before the phone number to show your number, or "184" to hide your number.
- Specify Caller ID setting prior to each call from Phone Book entry/Redial/Dialed Calls/Received Calls windows.

Adjust Earpiece (Speaker) Volume in Advance

【Phone Number Entry】window ▶▶ Press and hold [side key] ▶▶ [side key] or [▲]/[▼]

Add Area Code and Country Code (Prefix Numbers)

【Phone Number Entry】window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ *Prefix numbers* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [call]/[mail]

- Store area codes and country codes beforehand. Enter prefixes before making calls.
- You can also add prefix numbers from Phone Book entry/Redial/Dialed Calls/Received Calls windows.
- Only *国際発信* (International call: 0046010) is preset as a prefix number at the time of purchase.

International Calls

Enter "+" to Call Abroad

Press and hold [0] ▶▶ Enter country code ▶▶ Enter area code ▶▶ Enter phone number ▶▶ [call] ▶▶ *Dial* ▶▶ [■]

- "+" appears when you press and hold [0], indicating that the international code set in *Auto int'l call set.* is entered.

Handling Incoming Calls

Reject Calls

When a call arrives ▶▶ [camera key] ▶▶ ***Call Rejection*** ▶▶ [■]

Place Calls on Hold

When a call arrives ▶▶ [end key] ▶▶ When you can answer call ▶▶ [send key]

Press [end key] again to end the call on hold.

Forward Calls

When a call arrives ▶▶ [camera key] ▶▶ ***Call Forwarding*** ▶▶ [■]

Available when Call Forwarding has been activated from Voice Mail/Divert window.

Forward Calls to Voice Mail Center

When a call arrives ▶▶ [camera key] ▶▶ ***Call Forwarding*** ▶▶ [■]

Available when Voice Mail has been activated from Voice Mail/Divert window.

Engaged Call Operations

Start Here

【Voice Call】window .... P. 3-3
【Video Call】window.................. P. 3-7

Voice & Video Calls

Handsfree

【Voice Call】window/【Video Call】window ▶▶ [mail key]

Press [mail key] again to cancel handsfree mode.

Voice Calls

Send Touch Tones

【Voice Call】window ▶▶ [menu key] (twice) ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Dialing*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Pause dial*** ▶▶ [■] (twice)

Each time you press [send key], a touch tone sequence until "p" (pause) is sent.

Save touch tones in advance (P. 13-16).

- To send touch tones all at once: ▶▶ Press and hold [video key] ▶▶ ***Send at one time*** ▶▶ [■]

Video Calls

Set Image Quality

【Video Call】window ▶▶ [camera key] ▶▶ ***V.phone settings*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Visual prefer.*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ [■]

Adjust Brightness

【Video Call】window ▶▶ [Camera] ▶▶ ***V.phone settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Brightness*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a level ▶▶ ■

Change White Balance

【Video Call】window ▶▶ [Camera] ▶▶ ***V.phone settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***White balance*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ ■

Change Color Tone

【Video Call】window ▶▶ [Camera] ▶▶ ***V.phone settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Color mode set*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ ■

Change Photo Mode

【Video Call】window ▶▶ [Camera] ▶▶ ***V.phone settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Photo mode*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a mode ▶▶ ■

Available when sending the camera image.

Backlight Lighting Time

【Video Call】window ▶▶ [Camera] ▶▶ ***Display light*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***All time ON*** or ***10 seconds ON*** ▶▶ ■

Answering Machine

Start Here

【Play/Delete Voice Message】window .... P. 3-4

Delete Recorded Messages

【Play/Delete Voice Message】window ▶▶ Select a message ▶▶ [Camera] ▶▶ ***Delete this***, ***Delete rec. msg.*** or ***Delete all*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

Selecting ***Delete all*** also deletes a voice memo if it has been saved.

Call Logs

Redial, Dialed Calls & Received Calls

Start Here

【Redial】window........................ P. 3-10
【Dialed Calls】window .... P. 3-10
【Received Calls】window .... P. 3-10

Change Font Size

【Redial】window/【Dialed Calls】window/【Received Calls】window ▶▶ [Camera] ▶▶ ***Big font*** or ***Standard font*** ▶▶ ■

Show Ring Time (Missed Calls)

【Received Calls】 window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Ring time*** ▶▶ [■]

Delete Records

【Redial】, 【Dialed Calls】 or 【Received Calls】 window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Delete*** ▶▶ [■]

- Delete Selected Entry
  ▶▶ *Delete this* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]
- Select Entries to Delete
  ▶▶ *Delete selected* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select records ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [✉] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]
- Delete All Entries
  ▶▶ *Delete all* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]

Selecting *Delete all* in Redial window or Dialed Calls window deletes all records from both Redial and Dialed Calls.

Call Time & Cost

Reset Total Call Time

[■] ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Call Time/ Charge*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Reset total*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Reset total duration*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

Reset Total Call Cost

[■] ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Call Time/ Charge*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Reset total*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Reset total cost*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter PIN2 ▶▶ [■]

Speed Dial

Start Here

【Quick List】 window.................. P. 3-12

Cancel Entries from Quick List

【Quick List】 window ▶▶ [◀▶] to select a tab ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Release this*** or ***Release all*** ▶▶ [■] (▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ [■]) ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

Change Quick List Entry Image

【Quick List】 window ▶▶ [◀▶] to select a tab ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Image*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select an image ▶▶ [■]

Optional Services

Start Here

【Voice Mail/Divert】window .... P. 3-14
【Voice Call】window .... P. 3-3

Call Forwarding & Voice Mail

Delete Desktop Notifications for Recorded Messages

【Voice Mail/Divert】window ▶▶ *Erase Icon* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■

Check Current Setting Status

【Voice Mail/Divert】window ▶▶ *Get Status* ▶▶ ■

Call Waiting

Set Call Waiting

■ ▶▶ *Optional Services* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Call Waiting* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *ON* or *OFF* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■

Answer Incoming Calls during Calls

【Voice Call】window ▶▶ Call waiting tone sounds ▶▶ [Send]

- Press ■ to toggle between two parties.

Check Current Setting Status

■ ▶▶ *Optional Services* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Call Waiting* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Get Status* ▶▶ ■

Group Calling

Hold Current Call to Make Another Call

【Voice Call】window ▶▶ [クリア] ▶▶ Enter phone number ▶▶ [Send]

- To dial from Phone Book, press [Phone Book], search Phone Book, select a number and then press [Send].
- To dial from Dialed/Received Calls, use [Navigation] to select a phone number/name and then press [Send].

Switch Parties

【Voice Call】window ▶▶ ■

- Press ■ to toggle parties.

Talk with Multiple Parties Simultaneously

【Voice Call】window ▶▶ While talking with one party ▶▶ [Camera] ▶▶ *Join Multi Party* ▶▶ ■

Talk with a Specific Party

【Voice Call】window ▶▶ While talking with multiple parties ▶▶ [Camera] ▶▶ *Select Ans. Call* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a party ▶▶ ■

- The other parties are placed on hold while talking with the selected party.

End Call with a Specific Party

【Voice Call】window ▶▶ While talking with multiple parties ▶▶ [Camera] ▶▶ *Select Disc call* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a party ▶▶ ■

Call Barring

Restrict Incoming/Outgoing Calls & SMS

■ ▶▶ *Optional Services* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Call Barring* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Outgoing Calls* or *Incoming Calls* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Network Password ▶▶ ■

- Emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) are available even when Call Barring is set.
- When *Bar All Outgoing Calls* or *Bar All Incoming Calls* is set for Call Barring, Call Forwarding is unavailable. Call Barring is unavailable when Call Forwarding is set.
- If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, Call Barring settings are locked. Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-48).

Cancel Call Barring

■ ▶▶ *Optional Services* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Call Barring* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Cancel All Barring* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Network Password ▶▶ ■

Change Network Password

■ ▶▶ *Optional Services* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Call Barring* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Set NW Password* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter current Network Password ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter new Network Password ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter new Network Password again for confirmation ▶▶ ■

Check Current Setting Status

■ ▶▶ *Optional Services* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Call Barring* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Get Status* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ ■

Caller ID

Show/Hide Phone Number

■ ▶▶ *Optional Services* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Caller ID Notification* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Activate/Deactivate* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *ON* or *OFF* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■

Check Current Setting Status

■ ▶▶ *Optional Services* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Caller ID Notification* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Get Status* ▶▶ ■

Security

4

Setting PIN Entry

Set to require PIN entry each time handset is turned on.

1 ■ ▶ ***Settings*** ▶ ■ ▶ ***Security*** ▶ ■ ▶ ***PIN setting*** ▶ ■

2 Enter Security code ▶ ■

3 ***PIN1 code entry set*** ▶ ■

4 ***ON*** ▶ ■ ▶ Enter PIN ▶ ■

■To Set PIN Entry Off

▶ *OFF* ▶ ■ ▶ Enter PIN ▶ ■

Changing PIN/PIN2

● *PIN1 code entry set* must be set to *ON* before changing PIN1.

1 ■ ▶ ***Settings*** ▶ ■ ▶ ***Security*** ▶ ■ ▶ ***PIN setting*** ▶ ■

2 Enter Security code ▶ ■

3 ***Change PIN1 code*** or ***Change PIN2 code*** ▶ ■

4 Enter current PIN1/PIN2 ▶ ■

5 Enter new PIN1/PIN2 ▶ ■ ▶ Enter new PIN1/PIN2 again for confirmation ▶ ■

Activating Dial Lock

Activate Dial Lock to prevent others from operating handset.

1 ■ ▸▸ ***Settings*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Security*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Function Lock*** ▸▸ ■

2 **Enter Security code** ▸▸ ■

3 ***Dial lock*** ▸▸ ■

Tip

- The following operations are possible even when Dial Lock is activated:
  - Power on/off
  - Calling emergency numbers 110, 119 and 118
  - Answering incoming voice/video calls

Canceling Dial Lock

1 **When Dial Lock is set ▸▸ Enter Security code** ▸▸ ■

■If Security code is Incorrectly Entered

▸▸ ⌐ ▸▸ Enter Security code ▸▸ ■

Tip

- If you fail to cancel Dial Lock five times consecutively, handset is turned off. However, it can be turned on again to cancel the lock.

Setting Custom Lock

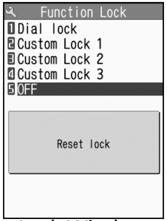
Individually set lock by function (e.g. Phone Book, Mail, etc.).

● For IC Card Lock and Call Remote Lock, see P. 10-4.

Activating Custom Lock

1 ■ ▸▸ ***Settings*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Security*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Function Lock*** ▸▸ ■

2 **Enter Security code** ▸▸ ■



Lock Window

3 ***Custom Lock 1 - Custom Lock 3*** ▸▸ ■

Functions/data specified under the selected lock type are locked.

■To Edit Title

▸▸ Select an Custom Lock ▸▸ 📷 ▸▸ ***Edit title*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ Edit title ▸▸ ■

◎When Custom Lock is Set

Security code entry is requested when accessing a locked function or data. Enter Security code to unlock and access function/data. Setting returns when handset returns to Standby.

● *Dial/sending mail* and *Incoming/Mail disp.* cannot be unlocked temporarily.

Customizing Custom Lock

Select functions/data that you want to lock.

1 **[Lock] window ▸▸ Select an Custom lock** ▸▸ ✉

Indicator description:

- 🔑 One or more functions/data are selected to be locked.
- ALL 🔑 All functions/data are selected to be locked.

2 **Select an item ▶ ■**

Repeat this step until the function/ data you want to lock/unlock appears.

■**To Select All Functions/Data under Selected Item**

Before pressing ■ in step 2 ▶ 📷 ▶ ***Select*** ▶ ■

■**To Deselect All Functions/Data under Selected Item**

Before pressing ■ in step 2 ▶ 📷 ▶ ***Release*** ▶ ■

■**To Select All Items Including Selected Item**

Before pressing ■ in step 2 ▶ 📷 ▶ ***Select all*** ▶ ■

■**To Deselect All Items Including Selected Item**

Before pressing ■ in step 2 ▶ 📷 ▶ ***Release all*** ▶ ■

3 **Select a function/data item ▶ ■**

Repeat this step to select other functions/data. Press ■ again to cancel.

4 **✉ [Finish] (3 times) ▶ ■**

The number of times ✉ must be pressed depends on the function/ data.

Disabling Keypad

Set Keypad Lock to automatically lock handset keys when handset is closed or when handset is not operated for a certain period of time.

Setting Keypad Lock

1 **■ ▶ *Settings* ▶ ■ ▶ *Security* ▶ ■ ▶ *Keypad lock* ▶ ■**

2 **Enter Security code ▶ ■**

3 ***After folded* or *Timer* ▶ ■ ▶ Select an item ▶ ■ ▶ ✉**

◎When Keypad Lock is Set

All key operations are disabled, except for answering incoming calls, showing clock with ▲/▼ and turning power on/ off.

When a call arrives or the alarm is activated, 📱 appears at the bottom of Display to indicate some keys are operable.

Tip

- You can still call emergency numbers 110, 119 and 118 even when Keypad Lock is set.

Temporarily Unlocking Keypad Lock

1 **When Keypad Lock is set ▶ Enter Security code ▶ ■**

Using Secure Remote Lock

If your handset is lost, lock handset functions remotely from a PC or other mobile phones. Once the lock is set, all key operations are disabled except for turning the power on. For details, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (http://www.softbank.jp), or access My SoftBank from your handset by the following procedure:

Y! ▶ *メニューリスト* (Menu List) ▶ ■ ▶ ***My SoftBank*** ▶ ■

Rejecting Calls without Caller ID

Incoming calls from hidden and/or unidentified numbers can be rejected.

1. ■ ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Security*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Call setting w/o ID*** ▶▶ ■
2. **Enter Security code** ▶▶ ■
3. ***Unknown***, ***Payphone*** **or** ***User unset*** ▶▶ ■
4. ***Reject*** ▶▶ ■

■To Receive Incoming Calls

▶▶ *Accept* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Select ring tone* or *Select calling disp.* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a sub folder ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a ringtone/image ▶▶ ■

Rejecting Calls from Numbers Not Saved in Phone Book

1. ■ ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Security*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Reject unknown*** ▶▶ ■
2. **Enter Security code** ▶▶ ■
3. ***Reject*** ▶▶ ■

■To Receive Incoming Calls

▶▶ ***Accept*** ▶▶ ■

Note

- Unavailable when *Set mute seconds* under *Ring time (sec.)* is set to *ON* (P. 4-5).

Delaying Ringtone for Numbers Not Saved in Phone Book

Delay ringtone, for calls from numbers not saved in Phone Book. It can prevent you from accidentally returning calls to nuisance calls from Received Calls; as missed calls with very short ring times are not saved in Received Calls, when ***Missed calls display*** is set to ***Not display***.

● Unavailable when *Reject unknown* is set to *Reject*.

1. ■ ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Incoming Call*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Ring time (sec.)*** ▶▶ ■
2. ***Set mute seconds*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Enter time before ringtone plays**

■To Set 0 Seconds

▶▶ ***OFF*** ▶▶ ■

3. ***Missed calls display*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Display*** **or** ***Not display*** ▶▶ ■

Tip

- Secret Phone Book entries are also treated as not saved in Phone Book.
- You need not to specify a time when *OFF* is selected.

Emission OFF Mode

The following are prohibited in Emission OFF Mode:

- Incoming/Outgoing Calls
- Incoming/Outgoing Messages
- Yahoo! Keitai Access

1. ■ ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Security*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Emission OFF Mode*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

   Repeat procedure to cancel Emission OFF Mode.

Tip

- Emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) are available even in Emission OFF Mode.

Secret Mode & Secret Data Only Mode

Activate Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode to view secret Phone Book entries, secret Schedule events and secret files.
Secret Mode:
View all data and secret data.
Secret Data Only Mode:
Only secret Phone Book entries and secret Schedule events are available.

Activating Secret Mode/ Secret Data Only Mode

1. ■ ▶ ***Settings*** ▶ ■ ▶ ***Security*** ▶ ■ ▶ ***Secret mode*** **or** ***Secret data only mode*** ▶ ■
2. **Enter Security code** ▶ ■

Canceling Secret Mode/ Secret Data Only Mode

1. ⌐

Tip

- Making or receiving a call cancels Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode.

Hiding Handset Data

Files stored in Secret Folders are accessible only when Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode is activated.

- The following data can be stored in Secret Folders: Images, videos, received/ sent messages, and bookmarks of Yahoo! Keitai and PC Browser
- Data saved on memory card or USIM card cannot be stored in Secret Folders.
- Each Secret Folder of Data Folder has a fixed storage capacity as follows:
  ･My Picture: Approx. 2 MB
  ･Videos: Approx. 10 MB

Storing Data in Secret Folders

1. **Set handset to Secret Mode/ Secret Data Only Mode**
2. **In a data list window** ▶ **Select a data item** ▶ 📷 ▶ ***Keep in secret*** ▶ ■

Returning Data in Secret Folders to Ordinary Data

1. **Set handset to Secret Mode/ Secret Data Only Mode**
2. **In a data folder list window** ▶ ***Secret*** ▶ ■
3. **Select a data item** ▶ 📷 ▶ ***Put out*** ▶ ■
4. **Select a destination folder** ▶ ■

Tip

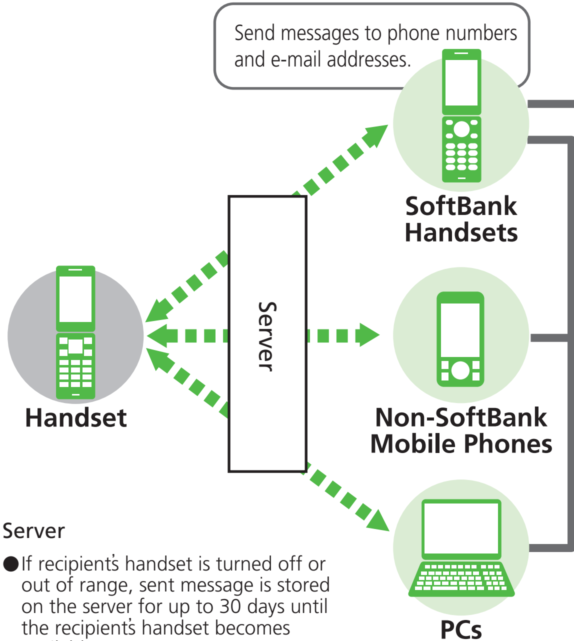
- Functions available with Secret Folder data are limited.

Mail

5

Overview

Handset supports S! Mail and SMS.



Server

- If recipient's handset is turned off or out of range, sent message is stored on the server for up to 30 days until the recipient's handset becomes available.

Available Mail Services

SMS — Exchange short text messages with other SoftBank handsets.

S! Mail (Separate contract required) — Exchange long text messages with S! Mail compatible SoftBank handsets and other e-mail compatible mobile phones and PCs. Images and melodies can also be attached to S! Mail.

Customize handset e-mail address (before the @ mark) as follows.
✉ ▸▸ *Mail Setting* ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ *Custom Mail Address* ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ Follow onscreen instructions

Graphic Mail

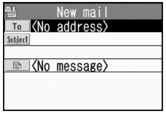
Use HTML mail to change font size/color, background, etc.

Emotion-Expressing Mail

Based on sender's message, handset shows a pictogram matching the sender's mood.

Sending S! Mail

1 **Press and hold** [✉]



Composition Window

2 **Select address field ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *Enter address* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter address ▶▶ [■]**

■**Adding Recipients**

▶▶ Select address field ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select address field ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Enter address*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter address ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [クリア]

3 **Select Subject field ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter subject ▶▶ [■]**

If [½] (double-byte mode) appears, switch to single-byte mode (P. 2-26).

Tip

- Add up to 20 recipients total between To, Cc and Bcc fields.

4 **Select text field ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter text ▶▶ [■]**



Text Entry Window

5 [✉]

■**To Cancel Transmission**

▶▶ When ***Start Packet Connection*** appears ▶▶ [■]; or ▶▶ During Transmission ▶▶ [Y!]

■**If *Resend mail?* Appears**

▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

Attaching Files

Attach the following files to S! Mail:

- Images
- Melodies
- Phone Book entries
- Calendar (Schedule/To Do List)
- Videos
- Music (Songs)
- Account Details
- Bookmarks

* For information about image, video, melody and music files, see P. 11-2.

1 **[Composition] window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ *Attach file* ▶▶ [■]**

2 **Select a file type ▶▶ [■] (▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ [■]) ▶▶ Select a file ▶▶ [■]**

■**Images with Large File Size**

▶▶ ***Attach mail*** or ***QVGA scale down*** ▶▶ [■]

■**Attach Additional Files**

▶▶ Repeat steps 1 and 2 above

■**Open an Attached File**

▶▶ Select an attached file ▶▶ [■]

Note

- Copy protected files cannot be sent as attachments or output to external devices.

Graphic Mail

Create html messages to change font color/size and background color. Add scrolling text, paste images, etc.

<Example> Change font size, background color, insert an image and set flashing text.

1 [Text Entry] window » [Edit icon] » [Font size icon] » ■ » Select a font size » ■ » Enter text » ■ (twice)

2 [Background color icon] » ■ » [Navigation key] to select a background color » ■

■To Toggle Color Palettes

» In Background color window » ✉

Toggle between 25-color and 256-color palettes.

3 [Image icon] » ■ » Select a folder » ■ » Select an image » ■

■Inserting Images with Large File Size

» *Insert mail* or *Add Art scale down* » ■

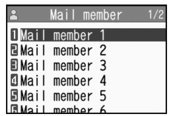
4 [Flash icon] » ■ » [Begin] » ■ » Enter text » ■ (twice) » [Flash icon] » ■ » [End] » ■

5 📷 » ■

Adding Addresses to Mail Member List

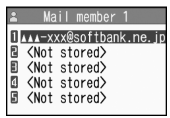
Group addresses into Mail Member list and send messages by group.

1 ■ » ***Own Data*** » ■ » ***Mail Member*** » ■



Mail Member List Window

2 Select a Mail Member list » ■



Mail Member Details Window

3 ***<Not stored>*** » ✉ » Enter address » ■

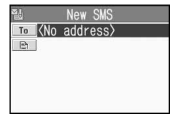
■To Save an Address from Phone Book or Sent/Received Address List

» *<Not stored>* » 📷 » ***Look-up address*** » ■ » ***Phonebook***, ***Sent address*** or ***Received address*** » ■ (» Search Phone Book) » Select an address » ■

Sending SMS Messages

Send short text messages to SoftBank handsets, specifying phone numbers as address.

1 ✉ » ***Compose SMS*** » ■



SMS Composition Window

2 [To] » ■ » ***Enter address*** » ■ » Enter phone number » ■

3 [Text icon] » ■ » Enter text » ■

4 ✉

More Features

Advanced

Composing Messages
- Enter Address from Phone Book
- Enter Address from Sent/Received Address List
- Specify Recipients from a Mail Member List
- Set To/Cc/Bcc
- Delete an Address
- Insert Header/Signature
- Enter My Pictograms
- Select SMS Input Language
- Delete Text
- Change SMS Message to S! Mail

(☛ P. 5-14)

Sending Messages
- Set Priority (S! Mail)
- Server Storage Period (SMS)
- Check Delivery
- Save a Message to Draft without Transmitting It
- Delete a Message without Transmitting It

(☛ P. 5-15)

Attaching Files
- Shoot an Image/Video to Attach to S! Mail
- Delete Files Attached to S! Mail

(☛ P. 5-16)

Mail Member
- Edit an Address
- Delete Addresses from a Mail Member List
- Edit a Mail Member List Name
- Reset a Mail Member List Name

(☛ P. 5-16)

Graphic Mail
- Apply Effects to Entered Text
- Change Effects
- Cancel Last Applied Effect
- Preview Graphic Mail
- Cancel All Effects
- Save Graphic Mail as a Template
- Download Templates
- Create Graphic Mail from a Template
- Edit a Template
- Edit Title of a Template
- Delete Templates

(☛ P. 5-16)

Customize

S! Mail Settings
- Edit Header/Signature
- Insert Header/Signature Automatically
- Set to Check Delivery

(☛ P. 13-21)

SMS Settings
- Set Delivery Confirmation On
- Set Server Storage Period (SMS)
- Set SMS Input Language

(☛ P. 13-21)

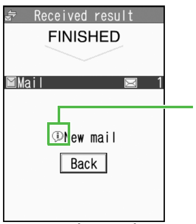
Opening New Messages

When a message is received, Received Results window appears.

- By default, the entire text message and attachments are received. This setting also applies while abroad. Note that transmission fees apply depending on your subscription.

◎Emotion-Expressing Mail

Indicators corresponding to text keywords appear in Received Results Window (P. 13-22).



Received Results Window

● Indicators

	Urgent		Advice
	Love		Try Hard
	Hate		Invitation
	Happy		Feedback
	Angry		Request
	Sad		Announcement
	Fun		OK
	Surprise		Reply
	Question		Information

* — appears if message contains no matching keywords.

1 **[Received Results] window ›› *Mail* ›› ■**

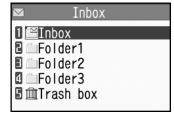
2 **Select a message ›› ■**

Tip

- Alternatively open new messages from Shortcut notification.
- Indicator may not always correspond to message content.

Opening Inbox Messages

1 ✉ **›› *Inbox* ›› ■**



Folder List

2 **Select a folder ›› ■**



Message List

3 **Select a message** ▶▶ [■]



Message Details Window

■**To Check Previous/Next Message**
▶▶ [◐]

Replying to Messages

1 **[Inbox Message List] window** ▶▶ **Select a message** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [✉]

■**To Quote Original Message Text**
▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Reply with quote*** ▶▶ [■]
">" is inserted at the beginning of each line of quoted text.

■**When Original Message Has Multiple Recipients**
▶▶ ***To sender*** or ***To all*** ▶▶ [■]

2 **Edit subject/text** ▶▶ [✉]

Tip

- Attachments are automatically deleted from reply messages.
- Quoting text is only available for S! Mail replies.

Using Mail List

Retrieve Mail List and select messages to download or forward.

1 [✉] ▶▶ ***Server Mail*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Mail list*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]



Mail List Window

2 **Select a message** ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Message receive*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Receive this*** ▶▶ [■]

■**To Receive Multiple Messages**
▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Message receive*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Receive selected*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select messages ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [✉]

5 Mail

■To Receive All Messages

[camera key] ▶ *Message receive* ▶ [■] ▶ *Receive all* ▶ [■]

Tip

- If download fails while retrieving all messages, download is canceled.
- When there is only one message, message opens upon retrieval.

More Features

Advanced

Receiving Messages

- Manually Retrieve Messages

(☞ P. 5-18)

Checking Messages

- Retrieve Complete S! Mail
- Delete S! Mail from Server
- Check Message Information

(☞ P. 5-18)

Server Message Operations

- Update Mail List
- Switch Mail List Views
- Check Server Message Information
- Forward a Server Message
- Delete Server Messages
- Check Server Memory Status

(☞ P. 5-18)

Customize

Incoming Message Alerts

- Adjust Ringtone Volume
- Set a Ringtone
- Set Ringing Duration of Incoming Message Ringtone
- Set Vibration
- Set Illumination Color

(☞ P. 13-11)

Incoming Message Settings

- Customize E-mail Address
- Do Not Show Emotion Indicators
- Set Priority When Receiving Messages during Operation
- Set Manual Download (S! Mail)

(☞ P. 13-22)

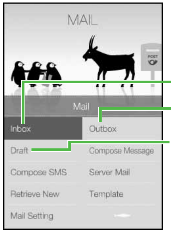
Reply Settings

- Change Quotation Marks

(☞ P. 13-23)

Message Storage Locations

Press ✉ to open Mail Main Menu. Sent, received and draft messages are saved in the locations below.

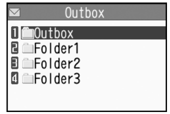


Mail Main Menu Window

Opening Sent/ Received Messages

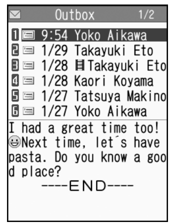
<Example> Open a Sent Message

1 ✉ » ***Outbox*** » ■



Folder List

2 Select a folder » ■



Message List

3 Select a message » ■



Message Details Window

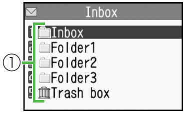
■To Check Previous/Next Message
» ◻

Tip

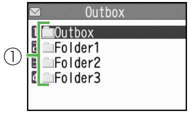
- When Outbox/Inbox becomes full, Trash Box messages and then the oldest messages in Outbox/Inbox are deleted next time a new message is sent/received. Unread and protected messages and Secret Folder messages are not deleted.

Mail Windows

Message types, statuses, and attached file types are shown by indicators.

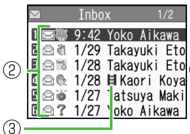


Inbox Folder List Window

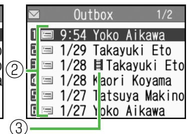


Outbox Folder List Window

Message List Windows

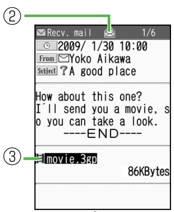


Inbox Message List Window



Outbox Message List Window

Message Details Windows



Received Message Details Window



Sent Message Details Window

①	Folder Type/Status General Folder Trash Box Folder Secret Folder
②	Message Status Unread Received Message Read Received Message Protected Received Message Forwarded Message Replied Message Message Sent to a Single Recipient Message Sent to Multiple Recipients
③	Message Type/Attached File Type SMS on Handset SMS on USIM Card S! Mail with Text Unreceived Image Attached/Image Inserted in Text Video Attached Melody Attached Song Attached Copyright-protected File Attached Phone Book Entry/Schedule Event/ Bookmark Attached Forwarded Server Message Other Type of File Attached Multiple Files Attached

* The following marks appear on indicators to inform you:

- Folder Contains Unread Messages
- Locked Folder
- Folder with Auto Sort Set
- Protected Message
- Delivery failed to Some Recipients/ Some Attachments Deleted
- Delivery Failed/All Attachments Deleted
- Attachment Deleted
- High Priority Message

Tip

- Copyright-protected files cannot be opened/played unless they are saved in Data Folder.
- If Delivery Report was received, appears in Subject field of message.

Sorting Messages

Automatically sort incoming/outgoing messages into folders. Create folders beforehand.

1 **[Folder List] window ▶ Select a folder ▶ 📷 ▶ *Auto-sort* ▶ ■**

■When Auto Sort is Already Set
▶ Select another criterion ▶ 📷

2 ***Address sort* ▶ ■ ▶ Search or Enter address ▶ ■**

■Sort by Subject
▶ ***Subject sort*** ▶ ■ ▶ Enter subject ▶ ■

■Sort Undelivered Messages
▶ ***Reply impossible*** or ***Send impossible*** ▶ ■

Tip

- Only one Inbox folder can be specified for sorting *Reply impossible* messages.
- Only one Outbox folder can be specified for sorting *Send impossible* messages.
- Search addresses from Phone Book, Received Address List, or Sent Address List in *Look-up address*.

Canceling Auto Sort

1 **[Folder List] window ▶ Select a folder ▶ 📷 ▶ *Auto-sort* ▶ ■**

2 **Select a criterion ▶ 📷 ▶ *Release* ▶ ■**

3 ***Release this* ▶ ■ ▶ *YES* ▶ ■**

■To Cancel Multiple Criteria
▶ ***Release selected*** ▶ ■ ▶ Select criteria ▶ ■ ▶ ✉ ▶ ***YES*** ▶ ■

■To Cancel All Criteria
▶ ***Release all*** ▶ ■ ▶ ***YES*** ▶ ■

Prohibiting Access to Messages

Setting Mail Box Lock

1 **✉ ▶ *Mail Setting* ▶ ■ ▶ *Mail box lock* ▶ ■ ▶ Enter Security code ▶ ■**

2 **Select a mail box ▶ ■**
Repeat step 2 to specify other boxes.

3 **✉**

Setting Folder Lock

1 **[Folder List] window ▶ Select a folder ▶ 📷 ▶ *Folder lock* ▶ ■ ▶ Enter Security code ▶ ■ ▶ *YES* ▶ ■**
Locked folders are indicated by .

Tip
- Repeat the same procedure to cancel mail box and folder lock.
- Trash Box folder can also be locked.
- Security code entry is required to view messages in locked mail boxes and folders.

Storing Messages in Secret Folders

Set handset to Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode beforehand (P. 4-6).

● Unread Messages cannot be stored in Secret Folders.

1 [Message List] window ▶▶ Select a message ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Keep in secret*** ▶▶ [■]

2 ***Keep this*** ▶▶ [■]

■To Store Multiple Messages

▶▶ *Keep selected* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a message ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Repeat the same step to specify other messages ▶▶ [✉] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]

■To Store All Messages in a Folder

▶▶ *Keep all* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]

◎Returning Messages in Secret Folders to Ordinary Messages

1 [Folder List] window ▶▶ ***Secret*** ▶▶ [■]

2 Select a message ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Put out*** ▶▶ [■]

3 ***Put out this*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ [■]

■To Return Multiple Messages

▶▶ *Put out selected* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a message ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Repeat the same step to specify other messages ▶▶ [✉] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]

■To Return All Messages

▶▶ *Put out all* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]

Saving S! Mail Attachments

Saving Image/Video/Melody/Music/Flash® Files

1 [Message Details] window ▶▶ Select a file ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Save data*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

2 Select a folder ▶▶ [■]

■To Set an Image as Wallpaper, etc.

▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ [■]

Select *NO* and press [■] when you do not want to set the image.

■To Set a Melody as Ringtone, etc.

▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ [■]

Select *NO* and press [■] when you do not want to set the melody.

Saving an Image Inserted in Text

1 [Message Details] window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Save insert image*** ▶▶ [■]

2 Select an image ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ [■]

3 ***YES*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ [■]

■When You Do Not Want to Set the Image

▶▶ *NO* ▶▶ [■]

Saving a Phone Book Entry

1 **[Message Details] window ⏩ Select contact information (a phone number, etc.) ⏩ ■ (twice) ⏩ *Phone* or *USIM* ⏩ ■ ⏩ *New* ⏩ ■**

2 **Edit each item ⏩ ✉**

Saving a Schedule Event

1 **[Message Details] window ⏩ Select Schedule data ⏩ ■ (twice)**

Saving a Bookmark

1 **[Message Details] window ⏩ Select a link (URL, etc.) ⏩ ■ (twice) ⏩ Select a destination ⏩ ■ (⏩ Select a folder ⏩ ■)**

Note

- Mail-attached bookmarks cannot be saved to *microSD*.

More Features

Advanced

Managing Messages

- Protect a Message
- Move Messages to a Different Folder
- Drop Messages into Trash Box
- Delete Messages
- Delete All Read Messages
- Delete All Delivery Reports
- Delete Attached Files
- Copy SMS Messages between Handset and USIM Card
- Delete SMS Messages on USIM Card
- Change Message Color
- Add a Folder
- Edit a Folder Name
- Change Order of Folders
- Delete a Folder
- Check Number of Saved Messages
- Check Sent/Received Addresses

(☛ P. 5-19)

Using Messages

- Edit a Sent Message
- Edit & Send a Draft Message
- Forward a Message
- Save Sender/Recipient's E-mail Address/ Phone Number to Phone Book
- Call a Phone Number in Text
- Send an S! Mail to an E-mail Address in Text
- Access the Internet from a URL in Text
- Save an E-mail Address/Phone Number in Text to Phone Book
- Switch Subject Field Views
- Change Font Size of Text
- Search for Messages in a Folder
- Sort Messages
- Filter Messages
- Reset Message List View to Default
- Switch All Unread Messages to Read Messages
- Open Delivery Report

(☛ P. 5-21)

Customize

Message View Settings & Others

- Set Message List View
- Play Attached Melodies Automatically
- Set Text Scroll Unit
- Set Text Font Size
- Check Mail Settings
- Reset Mail Settings

(☛ P. 13-23)

Sending Messages

Start Here

Composing Messages

Enter Address from Phone Book

【Composition】window/【SMS Composition】window ▶▶ To ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Phonebook*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Search Phone Book ▶▶ Select an entry ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an e-mail address/ phone number ▶▶ ■

Enter Address from Sent/Received Address List

【Composition】window/【SMS Composition】window ▶▶ To ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Sent address*** or ***Received address*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an e-mail address/phone number ▶▶ ■

- Alternatively, select To and press 📷 to open Sent/Received Address List.

Specify Recipients from a Mail Member List

【Composition】window ▶▶ To ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Mail member*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a Mail Member list ▶▶ ■

- All addresses in the selected Mail Member list are entered in the address field.
- You must save addresses to a Mail Member list in advance.

Set To/Cc/Bcc

【Composition】window ▶▶ To ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an address ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Change rcv. type*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***To***, ***Cc*** or ***Bcc*** ▶▶ ■

- Cc (Carbon copy): S! Mail copies are sent to other addresses. Addresses in the Cc field are revealed to the other recipients.
- Bcc (Blind carbon copy): S! Mail copies are sent to other addresses. Addresses in the Bcc field are hidden to the other recipients.
- When there is no address in the To field, the message cannot be sent.

Delete an Address

【Composition】window ▶▶ To ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an address ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Delete receiver*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

Insert Header/Signature

【Composition】 window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Add header*** or ***Add signature*** ▶▶ [■]

Save header/signiture in advance.

Enter My Pictograms

【Text Entry】 window ▶▶ Press and hold [mail] ▶▶ Select a pictograph ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [クリア]

Toggle categories by pressing [mail]/[Y!].

My Pictograms are only available for S! Mails.

Select SMS Input Language

【SMS Composition】 window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***SMS input char.*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Japanese*** or ***English*** ▶▶ [■]

Delete Text

【Composition】 window/【SMS Composition】 window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Erase message*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

Change SMS Message to S! Mail

【SMS Composition】 window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***S! Mail conversion*** ▶▶ [■]

Sending Messages

Set Priority (S! Mail)

【Composition】 window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Priority*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***High***, ***Normal*** or ***Low*** ▶▶ [■]

Server Storage Period (SMS)

【SMS Composition】 window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***SMS valid. per.*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a period ▶▶ [■]

Specify a period the SMS message is stored in the server in case it fails to reach the recipient because the recipient's handset is out of range, etc.

When *None* is set, the SMS message is deleted from the server after it is resent once in a certain period of time.

Check Delivery

【Composition】 window/【SMS Composition】 window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***DeliveryReport*** or ***SMS report req.*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ▶▶ [■]

When *ON* is set, handset receives a delivery report.

Save a Message to Draft without Transmitting It

【Composition】 window/【SMS Composition】 window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Save*** ▶▶ [■]

The message is saved to Draft. Messages saved in Draft can be edited and sent at a later time.

Delete a Message without Transmitting It

【Composition】 window/【SMS Composition】 window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Delete*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

Attaching Files

Shoot an Image/Video to Attach to S! Mail

【Composition】window ▶▶ [Camera] ▶▶ ***Activate camera*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Photo*** or ***Movie*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Shoot image/video ▶▶ [■]

Delete Files Attached to S! Mail

【Composition】window ▶▶ Select an attached file ▶▶ [Camera] ▶▶ ***Delete att. file*** or ***Del all att. files*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

Mail Member

Edit an Address

【Mail Member Details】window ▶▶ Select an address ▶▶ [Camera] ▶▶ ***Edit address*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Edit address ▶▶ [■]

Delete Addresses from a Mail Member List

【Mail Member Details】window ▶▶ Select an address ▶▶ [Camera]

- To Select *Delete this*
  ▶▶ *Delete this* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]
- To Select *Delete all*
  ▶▶ *Delete all* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]

Edit a Mail Member List Name

【Mail Member List】window ▶▶ Select a Mail Member list ▶▶ [Camera] ▶▶ ***Edit member name*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Edit name ▶▶ [■]

Reset a Mail Member List Name

【Mail Member List】window ▶▶ Select a Mail Member list ▶▶ [Camera] ▶▶ ***Reset member name*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

Graphic Mail

Apply Effects to Entered Text

【Text Entry】window ▶▶ [✎] ▶▶ [Edit] ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select beginning of characters ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select end of characters ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Apply effects

Select [Edit] and press [Y!] to select the entire text.

Change Effects

【Text Entry】window ▶▶ [✎] ▶▶ [Edit] ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select beginning of characters ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select end of characters ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select an effect menu ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Change effects

Select [Edit] and press [Y!] to select the entire text.

Cancel Last Applied Effect

【Text Entry】window ▶▶ [✎] ▶▶ [Undo] ▶▶ [■]

Preview Graphic Mail

【Text Entry】window ▶▶ [✎] ▶▶ [🔍] ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ [クリア]/[Y!] to close preview

Cancel All Effects

【Text Entry】 window ▶▶ [✎] ▶▶ [Reset All] ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■ (▶▶ ■)

Save Graphic Mail as a Template

【Text Entry】window ▶▶ Enter text ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Template*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Save template*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

- Attached files except images inserted in text are not included in a template.
- You can save up to 45 templates including downloads. You can also delete saved templates.

Download Templates

✉ ▶▶ ***Template*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Download Templates*** ▶▶ ■ (twice) ▶▶ Follow onscreen instructions

Create Graphic Mail from a Template

✉ ▶▶ ***Template*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a template ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ✉

Edit a Template

✉ ▶▶ ***Template*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a template ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Edit*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Edit text ▶▶ ■ (twice) ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

Edit Title of a Template

✉ ▶▶ ***Template*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a template ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Edit title*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Edit title ▶▶ ■

Delete Templates

✉ ▶▶ ***Template*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a template ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Delete*** ▶▶ ■

- To Select *Delete this*
  ▶▶ *Delete this* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■
- To Select *Delete selected*
  ▶▶ *Delete selected* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select templates ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ✉ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■
- To Select *Delete all*
  ▶▶ *Delete all* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■

Receiving/Opening Messages

Start Here

【Message Details】window .... P. 5-7
【Mail List】window .... P. 5-7

Receiving Messages

Manually Retrieve Messages

[✉] ▶▶ ***Retrieve New*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Received Results window opens ▶▶ ***Mail*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a message ▶▶ [■]

- Press [Y!] or press and hold [クリア] to cancel message retrieval.
- This procedure allows you to retrieve messages that were stored on the server while handset was off or out of range.

Checking Messages

Retrieve Complete S! Mail

[✉] ▶▶ ***Inbox*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select an S! Mail notification ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [✉]

- An S! Mail notification is deleted when you retrieve the message text.
- Use this procedure when *Message Download* under *S! Mail settings* is set to *Manual*.

Delete S! Mail from Server

[✉] ▶▶ ***Inbox*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select an S! Mail notification ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Delete*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Notification***, ***Server mail*** or ***Notifi./Server*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

Check Message Information

【Message List】window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Mail info*** ▶▶ [■]

- Only available in Inbox Message List window.

Server Message Operations

Update Mail List

【Mail List】window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Mail list*** ▶▶ [■]

Switch Mail List Views

【Mail List】window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***List setting*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Subject***, ***Name*** or ***Address*** ▶▶ [■]

Check Server Message Information

【Mail List】window ▶▶ Select a message ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Mail info*** ▶▶ [■]

Forward a Server Message

【Mail List】window ▶ Select a message ▶ [📷] ▶ ***Forward*** ▶ [■] ▶ [To] ▶ [■] ▶ Enter address ▶ [✉]

Delete Server Messages

【Mail List】window ▶ Select a message ▶ [📷] ▶ ***Delete*** ▶ [■]

- To Select *Delete this*
  ▶ *Delete this* ▶ [■] ▶ *YES* ▶ [■]
- To Select *Delete selected*
  ▶ *Delete selected* ▶ [■] ▶ Select messages ▶ [■] ▶ [✉] ▶ *YES* ▶ [■]
- To Select *Delete all*
  ▶ *Delete all* ▶ [■] ▶ Enter Security code ▶ [■] ▶ *YES* ▶ [■]

Check Server Memory Status

[✉] ▶ ***Server Mail*** ▶ [■] ▶ ***Server mail memory*** ▶ [■]

Managing/Using Messages

Start Here

【Folder List】window .... P. 5-9
【Message List】window .... P. 5-9
【Message Details】window .... P. 5-9
【Inbox Folder List】window ..... P. 5-10
【Inbox Message List】window .... P. 5-10
【Received Message Details】window .... P. 5-10
【Sent Message Details】window .... P. 5-10

Managing Messages

Protect a Message

【Message Details】window ▶ [📷] ▶ ***Protect ON/OFF*** ▶ [■]

[Note] [🔑] appears for protected messages. Select *Protect ON/OFF* again to cancel the setting.

Move Messages to a Different Folder

【Message List】window ▶ Select a message ▶ [📷] ▶ ***Move*** ▶ [■] ▶ ***Move this***, ***Move selected*** or ***Move all*** ▶ [■] ▶ Select a destination folder ▶ [■] (▶ Select messages ▶ [■] ▶ [✉]) ▶ ***YES*** ▶ [■]

[Note] A message can also be moved to a different folder from Message Details window.

Drop Messages into Trash Box

【Message List】window ▶ [📷] ▶ ***Move trash box*** ▶ [■] ▶ Select a message ▶ [■] ▶ [✉] ▶ ***YES*** ▶ [■]

[Note] Protected messages and delivery reports cannot be moved to Trash Box.

[Note] Only received messages can be moved to Trash Box.

Delete Messages

【Folder List】 window ▶▶ [Camera] ▶▶ ***Delete all*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

【Message List】 windows ▶▶ Select a message ▶▶ [Camera] ▶▶ ***Delete*** ▶▶ ■

- To Select *Delete this*
  ▶▶ *Delete this* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■
- To Select *Delete selected*
  ▶▶ *Delete selected* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select messages ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ [Mail] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■
- To Select *Delete all*
  ▶▶ *Delete all* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■

Protected messages cannot be deleted.

Delete All Read Messages

【Inbox Folder List】 window ▶▶ [Camera] ▶▶ ***Delete read*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

【Inbox Message List】 window ▶▶ [Camera] ▶▶ ***Delete*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Delete read*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

Protected messages cannot be deleted.

Delete All Delivery Reports

【Inbox Message List】 window ▶▶ [Camera] ▶▶ ***Delete*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Delete all reports*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

Protected delivery reports cannot be deleted.

Delete Attached Files

【Message Details】 window ▶▶ [Camera] ▶▶ ***Delete att. file*** or ***Del all att. files*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

Copy SMS Messages between Handset and USIM Card

■ ▶▶ ***Tools*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***USIM Operation*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Copy*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Phone→USIM*** or ***USIM→Phone*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***SMS*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Inbox*** or ***Outbox*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an SMS message ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ [Mail] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

Delete SMS Messages on USIM Card

■ ▶▶ ***Tools*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***USIM Operation*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Delete*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***USIM*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***SMS*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Inbox*** or ***Outbox*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an SMS message ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ [Mail] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

Change Message Color

【Message List】 window ▶▶ Select a message ▶▶ Press and hold [*]

Each time you press and hold [*], the message color toggles as follows: Red → Blue → Black

Add a Folder

【Folder List】 window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Add folder*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter folder name ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Address sort***, ***Subject sort*** or ***Reply impossible*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Make Auto Sort settings ▶▶ [✉] ▶▶ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ▶▶ [■]

Select ***NO*** and press [■] when you do not want to make Auto Sort settings to the folder.

Edit a Folder Name

【Folder List】 window ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Edit folder name*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Edit folder name ▶▶ [■]

Preinstalled folders cannot be renamed.

Change Order of Folders

【Folder List】 window ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Sort folder*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a position ▶▶ [■]

You cannot change order of preinstalled folders.

Delete a Folder

【Folder List】 window ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Delete folder*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

Folders containing protected messages and preinstalled folders cannot be deleted.

This procedure also deletes messages stored in the folder.

Auto Sort settings are also canceled when you delete a folder with Auto Sort settings.

Check Number of Saved Messages

【Folder List】 window/ 【Message List】 window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***No. of messages*** ▶▶ [■]

The total number of messages, and the number of unread and protected messages in a folder can be checked from Folder List window.
The number of messages in a folder can be checked from Message List window.

Check Sent/Received Addresses

Press and hold [◧]/[◨] ▶▶ Select an entry ▶▶ [■]

Using Messages

Edit a Sent Message

[✉] ▶▶ ***Outbox*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a sent message ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Edit*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Edit address/subject/text ▶▶ [✉]

Edit & Send a Draft Message

[✉] ▶▶ ***Draft*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a message ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Edit address/subject/text ▶▶ [✉]

Forward a Message

【Received Message Details】 window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Forward*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter address ▶▶ [✉]

- The subject and text can also be edited.
- Files attached to/inserted in S! Mails are also forwarded.

Save Sender/Recipient's E-mail Address/Phone Number to Phone Book

【Message Details】 window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Address list*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Save address*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Phone*** or ***USIM*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a saving option ▶▶ [■] (▶▶ Search Phone Book ▶▶ Select an entry ▶▶ [■]) ▶▶ Edit each item ▶▶ [✉]

- Select an address to save to Phone Book when the message has multiple recipients.

Call a Phone Number in Text

【Message Details】 window ▶▶ Select a phone number ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Voice phone*** or ***Video Call*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Dial*** ▶▶ [■]

Send an S! Mail to an E-mail Address in Text

【Message Details】 window ▶▶ Select an e-mail address ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Compose S! Mail ▶▶ [✉]

Access the Internet from a URL in Text

【Message Details】 window ▶▶ Select a URL ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

Save an E-mail Address/Phone Number in Text to Phone Book

【Message Details】 window ▶▶ Select an e-mail address/phone number ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Add to phonebook*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Phone*** or ***USIM*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a saving option ▶▶ [■] (▶▶ Search Phone Book ▶▶ Select an entry ▶▶ [■]) ▶▶ Edit each item ▶▶ [✉]

Switch Subject Field Views

【Message List】 window ▶▶ Press and hold [#]

- When *Mail list disp*. is set to *2 lines*, the view toggles as follows: Name → Address
- When *Mail list disp*. is set to *1 line*, or to *1 line+body*, the view cycles as follows: Subject → Name → Address

Change Font Size of Text

【Message Details】 window ▶▶ Press and hold [side key]

Search for Messages in a Folder

【Message List】 window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Search mail*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Search sender***, ***Search receiver*** or ***Search subject*** ▶▶ [■] (▶▶ Select a search criterion ▶▶ [■]) ▶▶ Select an address or enter address/subject ▶▶ [■]

You can narrow down search results by repeating the search operation.

Sort Messages

【Message List】 window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Sort*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a criterion ▶▶ [■]

This procedure can be combined with the *Filter* operation below.

Filter Messages

【Message List】 window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Filter*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a criterion ▶▶ [■]

This procedure can be combined with the *Sort* operation above.

Reset Message List View to Default

【Message List】 window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Display all*** ▶▶ [■]

This procedure returns the message list view that has been changed by search, sort or filter operation to its original view.

Switch All Unread Messages to Read Messages

【Inbox Message List】 window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Read all*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

Open Delivery Report

【Sent Message Details】 window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Disp. report*** ▶▶ [■]

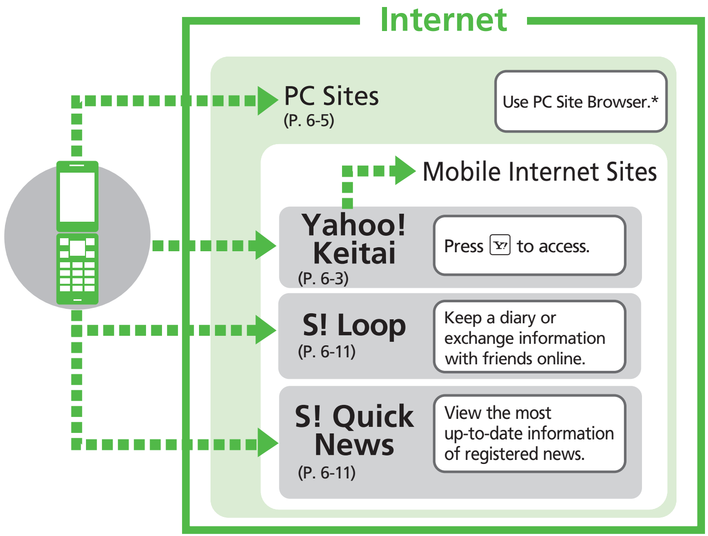
Only available in Message Details window of a sent message with a requested delivery report.

Internet

6

Overview

Access the Mobile Internet via Yahoo! Keitai (SoftBank's mobile portal site). Browse PC sites using PC Site Browser.



Transmission & Information Fees
Some web contents automatically connect to different pages incurring transmission fees.
Information fees may also apply.

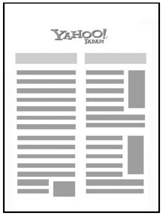
About Security
Handset supports SSL/TLS (encryption protocols for Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information). Root certificates necessary to use SSL/TLS are saved on handset at the time of purchase.

- When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of SSL/TLS usage.
  SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp., VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., Entrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Japan Ltd. and Secom Trust Systems Co., Ltd. cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL/TLS.

* When ***Warning messages*** is set to ***ON***, an alert window opens each time handset connects to a website using PC Site Browser.

Connecting to Yahoo! Keitai

1 [Y!]



Web Page

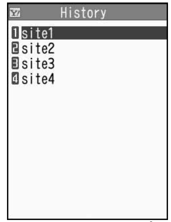
2 **Select an item** » [■]

Repeat this step until the page you want to view opens.

3 [⌒] **to exit the Internet** » ***YES*** » [■]

Using History

1 **Press and hold** [Y!] » ***History*** » [■]

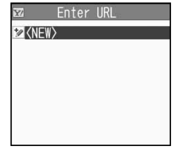


History List Window

2 **Select a record** » [■]

Entering URLs

1 **Press and hold** [Y!] » ***Enter URL*** » [■]



Enter URL Window

2 ***<NEW>*** » [■] » **Enter URL** » [■] » ***OK*** » [■]

Tip

- A confirmation window for SSL/TLS communication appears each time a secure page is opened. [SSL] appears in SSL/TLS compatible pages.
- Some pages require user authentication. Select text entry field and enter your user ID or password.

More Features

Advanced

Yahoo! Keitai
- Switch to PC Site Browser
- Return to Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

(☛ P. 6-12)

History
- Save a URL in History to Bookmark
- Check a URL in History
- Delete Records in History

(☛ P. 6-12)

Entering URLs
- Access a Page from an Entered URL Record
- Access a Page by Editing an Entered URL Record
- Send an Entered URL Record by Mail
- Delete Entered URL Records

(☛ P. 6-12)

Root Certificates
- Check Certificate Details
- Switch a Certificate between Valid & Invalid

(☛ P. 6-13)

Customize

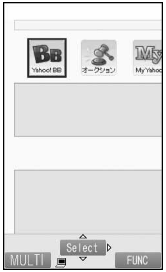
Internet
- Clear Cache
- Delete Cookies
- Initialize Memory Status of Internet
- Set Whether to Send Manufacture Number
- Set Send Referer On/Off
- Enable/Disable Cookies
- Set Whether to Activate Scripts
- Check Internet Settings
- Reset Internet Settings

(☛ P. 13-25)

PC Site Browser Windows

PC site pages are displayed in their original size when using PC Site Browser. You can view the area you want by moving the window up, down, left, or right.

- You may not be able to view as you want depending on the site.
- Note that transmission fees may be expensive for pages with large amounts of data.



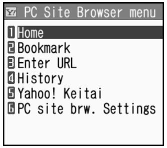
PC Site Browser

About Page Layout

When using PC Site Browser, two page layout types are available for each of PC screen and Small screen:
PC screen: Scroll pages vertically and horizontally.
Small screen: Scroll pages vertically. Pages are laid out to fit Display width.

Connecting to PC Sites

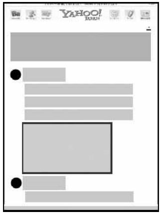
1. Press and hold [Y!] ▸ ***PC Site Browser*** ▸ [■]



PC Site Browser Menu

2. ***Home*** ▸ [■] (▸ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ▸ [■]) ▸ Select an item ▸ [■]

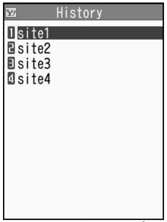
Repeat this step until the page you want to view opens.


Web Page

3. [⌒] to exit the Internet ▸ ***YES*** ▸ [■]

Using History

1 **[PC Site Browser Menu] window ▶▶ *History* ▶▶ [■]**

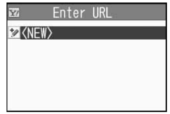


History List Window

2 **Select a record ▶▶ [■] (▶▶ *YES* or *NO* ▶▶ [■])**

Entering URLs

1 **[PC Site Browser Menu] window ▶▶ *Enter URL* ▶▶ [■]**



Enter URL Window

2 ***<NEW>*** **▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter URL ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *OK* ▶▶ [■] (▶▶ *YES* or *NO* ▶▶ [■])**

More Features

Advanced

PC Site Browser
- Switch Page Layout Types
- Return to Home

(☛ P. 6-12)

History
- Save a URL in History to Bookmark
- Check a URL in History
- Delete Records in History

(☛ P. 6-12)

Entering URLs
- Access a Page from an Entered URL Record
- Access a Page by Editing an Entered URL Record
- Send an Entered URL Record by Mail
- Delete Entered URL Records

(☛ P. 6-12)

Customize

Internet
- Clear Cache
- Delete Cookies
- Initialize Memory Status of Internet
- Set Whether to Send Manufacture Number
- Set Send Referer On/Off
- Enable/Disable Cookies
- Set Whether to Activate Scripts
- Check Internet Settings
- Reset Internet Settings

(☛ P. 13-25)

PC Site Browser
- Do Not Show Alert When Activating PC Site Browser & Switching Browsers

(☛ P. 13-26)

Switching Pages

Scrolling Pages

Scroll pages by using to view areas not in Display. Press / to move pages up and down one length of Display.

Viewing Frames

When a page is composed of multiple frames, you can select a frame to view.

1 **to select a frame**

2 ▶▶ ***Frame in*** ▶▶

Only the selected frame appears in Display. You can operate the frame as an ordinary web page.

■**To Return to All-Frames View**

▶▶ ▶▶ ***Frame Out*** ▶▶

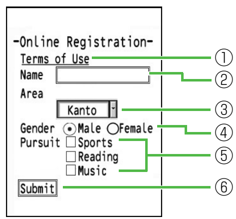
Jumping to Next/ Previous Page

Once opened pages are stored in a temporary storage area (cache). Press , select ***History back*** or ***History forward*** and press to go back to the previous page or proceed to the next page, without connecting to the network as long as the pages are stored in the cache.

● Network connection is made when the cache is full.

Selecting Links and Other Items

Operate as follows when buttons and menus appear in web pages.



①	**Link** Select a link and press to access the linked page.
②	**Text Box** Select a text box and press to open a text entry window to enter text.
③	**Pull-down Menu** Select a pull-down menu and press to open a list of options. Use to select an item and press .
④	**Radio Button** Use and press to select only one item from a range of options. ⦿ indicates the item is selected.
⑤	**Checkbox** Use and press to select multiple items from a range of options. ☑ indicates the item is selected.
⑥	**Command Button** Select a command button and press to activate the assigned function.

More Features

Advanced

Page Operations

- Reload Page
- Save Images/Melodies in a Page
- Save Background Image of a Page
- Send URL of a Page by Mail
- Call a Phone Number in a Page
- Send an S! Mail to an E-mail Address in a Page
- Access Another Page from a URL in a Page
- Save a Phone Number/E-mail Address in a Page to Phone Book
- Change Font Size of a Page
- Zoom Page In/Out
- Jump to Top/End of a Page
- Change Character Code of a Page
- Play Flash® from the Beginning
- Check Title/URL/Certificate of a Page
- Show Key Guidance

(☞ P. 6-13)

Customize

Internet

- Set Scroll
- Auto Download On/Off (Image/Melody)

(☞ P. 13-25)

Yahoo! Keitai

- Set Font Size
- Set Flash® Sound On/Off

(☞ P. 13-26)

PC Site Browser

- Set Page Layout

(☞ P. 13-26)

Using Bookmarks

Save URLs to Bookmark for quick access.

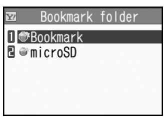
Saving URLs to Bookmark

1 [Web Page] » [📷] » ***Bookmark*** » [■] » ***Add bookmark*** » [■] » ***YES*** » [■]

2 Select a folder » [■]

Accessing Pages from Bookmarks

1 Press and hold [Y!] » ***Bookmark*** » [■]

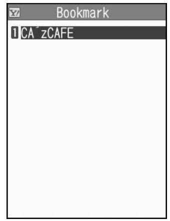


Bookmark Folder List Window

■**To View Bookmarks of PC Site Browser**

» Press and hold [Y!] » ***PC Site Browser*** » [■] » ***Bookmark*** » [■]

2 Select a folder » [■]



Bookmark List Window

3 Select a bookmark » [■]

Tip

- To access a bookmarked page from another page: [📷] » *Bookmark* » [■] » *Bookmark list* » [■] » Select a folder » [■] » Select a bookmark » [■]

Using Saved Pages

Save an open page to Saved Pages to view the page at a later time without connecting to the Internet.

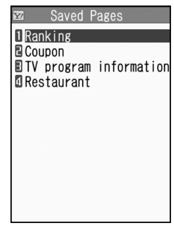
● Only Yahoo! Keitai pages can be saved.

Saving a Page

1 [Web Page] » [📷] » ***Saved Pages*** » [■] » ***Add Saved Pages*** » [■] » ***YES*** » [■]

Opening Saved Pages

1 Press and hold [Y!] » ***Saved Pages*** » [■]



Saved Pages List Window

2 **Select a page ▶▶ ■**

Tip

- To open a saved page from another page:
  📷 ▶▶ *Saved Pages* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Saved Pages List* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a page ▶▶ ■

More Features

Advanced

Bookmarks

- Edit a Title
- Edit a URL
- Send a Bookmark by Mail
- Check Number of Bookmarks
- Create a Folder
- Edit a Folder Name
- Change Order of Folders
- Move Bookmarks to a Different Folder
- Delete a Folder
- Delete Bookmarks

(☛ P. 6-15)

Saved Pages

- Edit a Title
- Protect Saved Pages
- Check Number of Saved Pages
- Delete Saved Pages

(☛ P. 6-17)

Using S! Quick News

Registered news can be updated automatically and checked from Standby.

Registering News

<Example> Register News on S! Quick News List

1 **Press and hold** [□]



S! Quick News List Window

2 ***Add News*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

3 **Select an item** ▶▶ [■]

Follow onscreen instructions.

Checking Updated Information

1 **[S! Quick News List] window** ▶▶ **Select an item** ▶▶ [■]

2 **Select information** ▶▶ [■]

■**To Check Next Updated Information**

▶▶ [Y!]

Using S! Loop

S! Loop is an online communication service. You can keep a diary and exchange information via BBS.

● Packet transmission fees are charged; may incur high charges.

1 **Press and hold** [Y!] ▶▶ ***S! Quick News*** ▶▶ [■]

2 ***S! Loop List*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ **Select an item** ▶▶ [■]

Follow onscreen instructions.

Tip

- Refer to the S! Loop help menu for operational instructions.

More Features

Advanced

S! Quick News

- Manually Update List
- Automatically Update List
- View Descriptions of Registered News
- Delete Registered News/Items

(☛ P. 6-17)

Customize

S! Quick News

- Hide S! Quick News from Standby
- Set Ticker Speed
- Show Read/Unread Information
- Hide Images
- Reset Registered Contents

(☛ P. 13-27)

Connecting to the Internet

Start Here

【Web Page】 .... P. 6-3, P. 6-5
【History List】 window...... P. 6-3, P. 6-6
【Enter URL】 window .... P. 6-3, P. 6-6

Yahoo! Keitai

Switch to PC Site Browser

【Web Page】 ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Switch to PC*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

Return to Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

【Web Page】 ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Yahoo! Keitai*** ▶▶ [■]

PC Site Browser

Switch Page Layout Types

【Web Page】 ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Change disp. mode*** ▶▶ [■]

The page layout toggles between PC screen and Small screen.

Return to Home

【Web Page】 ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Home*** ▶▶ [■]

History

Save a URL in History to Bookmark

【History List】 window ▶▶ Select a record ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Add bookmark*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ [■]

Check a URL in History

【History List】 window ▶▶ Select a record ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***URL*** ▶▶ [■]

Delete Records in History

【History List】 window ▶▶ Select a record ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Delete*** ▶▶ [■]

- To Select *Delete this*
  ▶▶ *Delete this* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]
- To Select *Delete selected*
  ▶▶ *Delete selected* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select records ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [mail] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]
- To Select *Delete all*
  ▶▶ *Delete all* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]

Entering URLs

Access a Page from an Entered URL Record

【Enter URL】 window ▶▶ Select a record ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***OK*** ▶▶ [■]

Access a Page by Editing an Entered URL Record

【Enter URL】window ▶▶ Select a record ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select URL entry field ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Edit URL ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***OK*** ▶▶ ■

Send an Entered URL Record by Mail

【Enter URL】window ▶▶ Select a record ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Compose message*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter address/subject/text ▶▶ ✉

Composition (S! Mail) window opens with the URL inserted in the text.

Delete Entered URL Records

【Enter URL】window ▶▶ Select a record ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Delete*** ▶▶ ■

- To Select *Delete this*
  ▶▶ *Delete this* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■
- To Select *Delete selected*
  ▶▶ *Delete selected* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select records ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ✉ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■
- To Select *Delete all*
  ▶▶ *Delete all* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■

Root Certificates

Check Certificate Details

■ ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Connection Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Certificate*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a certificate ▶▶ ■

Switch a Certificate between Valid & Invalid

■ ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Connection Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Certificate*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a certificate ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Valid/Invalid*** ▶▶ ■

This procedure switches a valid certificate to invalid and an invalid one to valid.

Page Operations

Start Here

【Web Page】 ....P. 6-3, P. 6-5

Reload Page

【Web Page】 ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Reload*** ▶▶ ■

Save Images/Melodies in a Page

【Web Page】 ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Save file*** ▶▶ [■] (▶▶ Select a file ▶▶ [■]) ▶▶ ***Save*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■] (▶▶ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ▶▶ [■])

To play a melody, select ***Play*** and press [■].

To check file properties, select ***Property*** and press [■].

Save Background Image of a Page

【Web Page】 ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Save file*** ▶▶ [■] (▶▶ ***Background image*** ▶▶ [■]) ▶▶ ***Save*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■] (▶▶ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ▶▶ [■])

To check file properties, select ***Property*** and press [■].

Send URL of a Page by Mail

【Web Page】 ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Convenient tools*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Compose message*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Attach URL*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter address/subject/text ▶▶ [mail]

Composition (S! Mail) window opens with the URL inserted in the text.

Call a Phone Number in a Page

【Web Page】 ▶▶ Select a phone number ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Voice phone*** or ***TV Call*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Dial*** ▶▶ [■]

Only available when using Yahoo! Keitai.

Send an S! Mail to an E-mail Address in a Page

【Web Page】 ▶▶ Select an e-mail address ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Compose S! Mail ▶▶ [mail]

Access Another Page from a URL in a Page

【Web Page】 ▶▶ Select a URL ▶▶ [■]

Save a Phone Number/E-mail Address in a Page to Phone Book

【Web Page】 ▶▶ Select a phone number/e-mail address ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Add to phonebook*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Phone*** or ***USIM*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a saving option ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Edit each item ▶▶ [mail]

Change Font Size of a Page

【Web Page】 ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Change font size*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a font size ▶▶ [■]

Only available when the page layout type is ***Small screen*** in PC Site Browser.

Zoom Page In/Out

【Web Page】 ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ *Zoom* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a magnification ▶▶ ■

Zoom is only available when PC Site Browser is set to *PC screen*.

Jump to Top/End of a Page

【Web Page】 ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ *Convenient tools* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Head of sentence* or *End of sentence* ▶▶ ■

Change Character Code of a Page

【Web Page】 ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ *Convenient tools* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Change CHR code* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a character code ▶▶ ■

Use this procedure when characters of a page are illegible.

Play Flash® from the Beginning

【Web Page】 ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ *Convenient tools* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Replay* ▶▶ ■

Only available when using Yahoo! Keitai.

Check Title/URL/Certificate of a Page

【Web Page】 ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ *Convenient tools* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Site info* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Title*, *URL* or *Certificate* ▶▶ ■

Show Key Guidance

【Web Page】 ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ *Help* ▶▶ ■

Only available when using PC Site Browser.

Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Start Here

【Bookmark Folder List】 window .... P. 6-9

【Bookmark List】 window .... P. 6-9

【Saved Pages List】 window .... P. 6-9

Bookmarks

Edit a Title

【Bookmark List】 window ▶▶ Select a bookmark ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ *Edit title* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Edit title ▶▶ ■

Edit a URL

【Bookmark List】 window ▶▶ Select a bookmark ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ *Edit URL* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Edit URL ▶▶ ■

Send a Bookmark by Mail

【Bookmark List】 window ▶▶ Select a bookmark ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Compose message*** or ***Attach to mail*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter address/subject/text ▶▶ [mail]

Compose message: Composition (S! Mail) window opens with the URL inserted at the top of the text.
Attach to mail: Composition (S! Mail) window opens with the bookmark file attached.

Check Number of Bookmarks

【Bookmark Folder List】 window/【Bookmark List】 window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***No. of bookmarks*** ▶▶ [■]

The total number of bookmarks can be checked from Bookmark Folder List window; and the number of bookmarks in a folder can be checked from Bookmark List window.

Create a Folder

【Bookmark Folder List】 window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Add folder*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter folder name ▶▶ [■]

Edit a Folder Name

【Bookmark Folder List】 window ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Edit folder name*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Edit folder name ▶▶ [■]

Change Order of Folders

【Bookmark Folder List】 window ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Sort folder*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a position ▶▶ [■]

The order of Preset folders cannot be changed.

Move Bookmarks to a Different Folder

【Bookmark List】 window ▶▶ Select a bookmark ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Move*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Move this, Move selected*** or ***Move all*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a destination folder ▶▶ [■] (▶▶ Select bookmarks ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [mail]) ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

Delete a Folder

【Bookmark Folder List】 window ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Delete folder*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

This procedure also deletes all the bookmarks saved in the folder.

Delete Bookmarks

■To Delete All Bookmarks

【Bookmark Folder List】 window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Delete all*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

■To Delete Bookmarks in a Folder

【Bookmark List】 window ▶▶ Select a bookmark ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Delete*** ▶▶ [■]

- To Select *Delete this*
  ▶▶ *Delete this* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]
- To Select *Delete selected*
  ▶▶ *Delete selected* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select bookmarks ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [mail] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]
- To Select *Delete all*
  ▶▶ *Delete all* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]

Saved Pages

Edit a Title

【Saved Pages List】window ▶▶ Select a saved page ▶▶ ◙ ▶▶ ***Edit title*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Edit title ▶▶ ■

Protect Saved Pages

【Saved Pages List】window ▶▶ Select a saved page ▶▶ ◙ ▶▶ ***Protect ON/OFF*** ▶▶ ■

Use this procedure to toggle saved pages between protected and unprotected.

Check Number of Saved Pages

【Saved Pages List】window ▶▶ ◙ ▶▶ ***No. of pages*** ▶▶ ■

Delete Saved Pages

【Saved Pages List】window ▶▶ Select a saved page ▶▶ ◙ ▶▶ ***Delete*** ▶▶ ■

- To Select *Delete this*
  ▶▶ *Delete this* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■
- To Select *Delete selected*
  ▶▶ *Delete selected* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select saved pages ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ✉ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■
- To Select *Delete all*
  ▶▶ *Delete all* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■

Protected Saved Pages cannot be deleted.

S! Quick News

Start Here

【S! Quick News List】window... P. 6-11

Manually Update List

【S! Quick News List】window ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ ◙ ▶▶ ***Refresh this*** or ***Refresh all*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

Automatically Update List

Press and hold Y! ▶▶ ***S! Quick News*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Auto Refresh*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an interval, ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ▶▶ ■

View Descriptions of Registered News

【S! Quick News List】window ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ ◙ ▶▶ ***Outline*** ▶▶ ■

Delete Registered News/Items

【S! Quick News List】window ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ [camera key]

- To Select *Delete this*
  ▶▶ *Delete this* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■
- To Select *Delete all*
  ▶▶ *Delete all* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■ (twice) ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ■

Camera

7

Capture still images and record videos with handset camera.

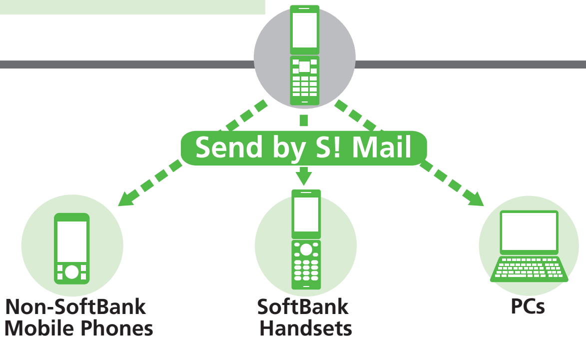
Shoot Still Images/Videos

BI-DO-RI
Optimal mode for portrait shots (P. 7-5).

Face Detection Auto Focus
Detects faces and adjusts AF frame for optimal focusing.

Continuous AF
Maintains focus within the focus frame for still images. Useful for subjects that move.

Image Stabilizer
Corrects images/videos from camera shake.

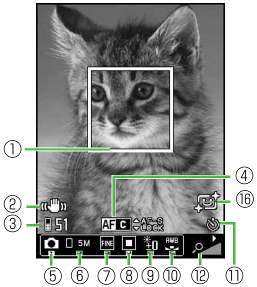


- Still images are saved in JPEG format and videos in MPEG4 format.
- Clean the lens with soft cloth. Fingerprints or grime on the lens may result in blurred images.
- Hold handset firmly, or shoot with Image Stabilizer set to Auto to avoid blurred images.
- Although the camera is made with high-precision technology, some pixels may appear brighter and some darker.
- Shooting or saving images when handset is warm may affect image quality.
- Exposing the lens to direct sunlight for an extended period may result in discoloration of photo images.
- Shutter click and Auto timer tone sound at a fixed volume even in Manner Mode.
- You may hear a low hum when using camera (focusing in auto focus, Continuous AF, shooting, focus lock, camera activation, etc.). This is from the internal components and is normal.
- When shooting indoors with fluorescent lighting, fluorescent flicker (unperceivable to one's eyes) may be detected and appear as a faint striped pattern on Display, but this is not a defect.

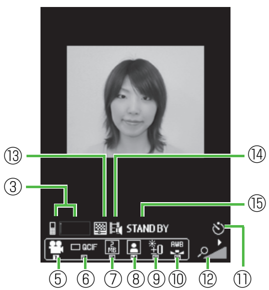
Viewfinder Indicators

Following indicators appear in Viewfinder.

Photo Viewfinder



Video Viewfinder



①	**Focus Frame (Still Image)** A white frame is displayed when auto focus is set. A red frame is displayed for failed focus.
②	**Image Stabilizer Setting (Still Image)** Image Stabilizer on Auto*1
③	**Storage Location (Still Image)** Handset Memory Card **Number of Files That can be Saved(Still Image)** White number: 11 or more Yellow number: 10 or less Red number: No memory space **Storage Location (Video)** Handset Memory Card **Storage Capacity (Video)** Blue: 500 KB or more Yellow: Less than 500 KB Red: No memory space
④	**AF Status Display (Still Image)** AF C ContinuousAF (Maintains focus in focus frame) AF S SinglePointAF (After releasing shutter, focuses in the focus frame and shoots) AF OFF OFF

⑤	**Camera Mode** BI-DO-RI Photo Serial Movie Bar Code Reader
⑥	**Image Size (Still Image)*2*3** 5M 5M (A3 Size) 3M 3M (A4 Size) 2M 2M (L/2L Size) VGA VGA (PC Size) WQVGA WQVGA (Wide) QVGA QVGA (Wallpaper)
	Image Size (Video) QVGA QVGA (VIDEO) QCIF QCIF (MAIL L) Sub QCIF SubQCIF (MAIL S)
⑦	**Image Quality (Still Image)*4** FINE Fine NOR Normal
	File Size (Video) Mail attachment FILE Long time 2 MB 2MB
⑧	**Best Shot (Still Image)*5*6** **Photo Mode (Video)*7** Standard Sports Portrait Night View Scenery OFF OFF Accessories

⑨	**Brightness** +2 to -2
⑩	**White Balance***8 Auto Fine Cloudy Light bulb Fluorescent lamp
⑪	**Auto Timer** Auto timer set
⑫	**Zoom (16 steps)** Minimum to Maximum
⑬	**Image Quality (Video)** Long dur. mode Normal Fine mode*9 Super Fine mode*9
⑭	**Recording Type (Video)** Normal (Video & Sound) Video (Video only) Voice (Voice only)
⑮	**Recording Status (Video)** STANDBY Recording ready ●REC Recording
⑯	**BI-DO-RI** BI-DO-RI mode

*1 Image Stabilizer is always on Auto during video shooting.

*2 Image size is fixed at ***2M*** in BI-DO-RI mode.

*3 You can only select ***WQVGA*** or ***QVGA*** in Continuous mode.

*4 Fixed at ***Fine*** in BI-DO-RI mode.

*5 Fixed at ***Standard*** in BI-DO-RI mode.

*6 You cannot select ***Night View*** in Continuous mode.

*7 You can only select ***Portrait***, ***Scenery***, or ***Accessories***.

*8 For Photo mode or Continuous mode, you can select this only when ***OFF*** is selected for Best Shot.

*9 You can select this only when QVGA (VIDEO) is selected in Image Size.

Capture still images to send as S! Mail attachments, use as wallpaper, etc.
Choose from BI-DO-RI and Photo modes.
Use BI-DO-RI for capturing portraits and Photo for scenery, pets, etc.

- Still images are saved in Camera in My Picture in Data Folder. You can change the storage location to memory card (P. 13-33).
- In the following instances, faces are automatically detected and focused on.
  - When image size is set to *2M* or more in Photo and Best Shot is set to any of *Standard*, *Portrait*, or *OFF*, and *AFchange* is on any setting other than *OFF*
  - When set to BI-DO-RI

Tip

- Time may be required for displaying images shot in BI-DO-RI mode.
- Depending on the shooting environment and subject, faces may not be effectively detected.

Using BI-DO-RI Mode

1 Press and hold [camera key]

(Alternatively, ■ ▶▶ ***Camera*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***BI-DO-RI*** ▶▶ ■)



Photo Viewfinder

2 Display person to shoot ▶▶ ■

Photo Preview Window appears.

■To Retake Shot

▶▶ [クリア] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

3 ■

Tip

- Alternatively, activate camera from Shortcuts (P. 2-5).
- For best results when shooting portraits in BI-DO-RI mode, observe the following.
  - Remove glasses/sunglasses, masks, hats, and other items that partially block subject's face.
  - Subject's hair should not cover their face.
  - Subject should look straight into camera and should not tilt head.
- In the following cases, BI-DO-RI effect may not be apparent or images may appear unnatural.
  - Subject has a beard.
  - Poor shooting conditions, such as camera shake, out of focus, inadequate exposure or shadowed face.

Available Functions

Zoom (Telescopic)	▶
Zoom (Wide angle)	◀
AFchange[*1]	▲
AF LOCK[*2]	▼
Help	0
Light	Y!

*1 Pressing will cycle through *ContinuousAF*, *SinglePointAF*, and *OFF*.

*2 Focus locks with each press. To cancel AF LOCK, use *AFchange*.

Using Photo Mode

1 ■ ▶▶ ***Camera*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Photo*** ▶▶ ■

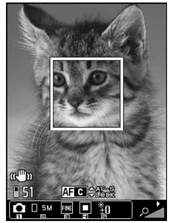


Photo Viewfinder

2 **Frame image in Viewfinder** ▶▶ ■



Photo Preview Window

■To Delete Image and Return to Viewfinder

▶▶ クリア ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

3 ■

Available Functions

Zoom (Telescopic)	▶
Zoom (Wide angle)	◀
AFchange[*1]	▲
AF LOCK[*2]	▼
Help	0
Light	Y!

*1 Pressing will cycle through *ContinuousAF*, *SinglePointAF*, and *OFF*.

*2 Focus locks with each press. To cancel AF LOCK, use *AFchange*.

More Features

Advanced

Shooting Still Images
- Change Camera Settings
- Switch Camera Modes
- Select Image Size
- Select Best Shot
- Adjust Brightness
- Switch Color Modes
- Set Image Stabilizer
- Check Storage Capacity

(☛ P. 7-12)

Using Still Images
- Attach Image to S! Mail
- Open Saved Files
- View Mirror Image
- Save Mirror Image
- Set Image as Wallpaper

(☛ P. 7-13)

Customize

Camera Settings
- Set Image Quality
- Set White Balance
- Reduce Flicker
- Set Shutter Sound

(☛ P. 13-32)

File Storage
- Set Storage Location
- Save Images Automatically

(☛ P. 13-33)

Recording Videos

Record videos with or without sound, or record sound only.

● Still images are saved in Camera in Videos in Data Folder. You can change the storage location to memory card (P. 13-33).

Recording Videos

1 [■] ▶▶ ***Camera*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Movie*** ▶▶ [■]



Video Viewfinder

2 **Frame image in Viewfinder** ▶▶ [■]

Recording starts.

3 [■]



Video Preview Window

Recording ends.

■To Play the Recording

▶▶ [Y!]

■To Discard the Recording and Return to Viewfinder

▶▶ [クリア] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

4 [■]

Available Functions

Zoom (Telescopic)	[▶]
Zoom (Wide angle)	[◀]
Help	[0]
Light	[Y!]

Note

- When shooting video, be careful not to cover the microphone with your fingers. Depending on surroundings and loudness of subject's voice, sound quality may be poor.

Tip

- The noise of keys being used such as for adjusting zoom during video shooting is sometimes also recorded.
- When file size (P. 13-32) is set to ***Long time***, videos are automatically saved. To replay video, access Data Folder.

More Features

Advanced

Shooting Videos

- Change Camera Settings
- Switch Camera Modes
- Select Image Size
- Select Photo Mode
- Adjust Brightness
- Switch Color Modes
- Check Storage Capacity
- Change Recording Type

(☛ P. 7-12)

Using Videos

- Attach Video to S! Mail
- Open Saved Files
- Set Video on Standby
- Edit Title (Video)

(☛ P. 7-13)

Customize

Video Settings

- Set Image Quality
- Set File Size
- Set White Balance
- Reduce Flicker
- Set Shutter Sound

(☛ P. 13-32)

File Storage

- Set Storage Location
- Save Videos Automatically

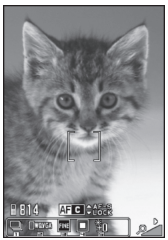
(☛ P. 13-33)

Using Continuous Mode

Shoot up to 10 still images consecutively.
Automatically shoots a set number of images at a set interval after you release the shutter.

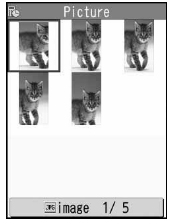
● To change interval/number of shots, see P. 13-33.

1 ■ ▶▶ ***Camera*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Serial*** ▶▶ ■



Continuous Viewfinder

2 **Frame image in Viewfinder** ▶▶ ■



Thumbnail Preview Window

■To Stop Shooting

▶▶ [key] ▶▶ ***NO*** ▶▶ ■

■To Reshoot

▶▶ [key] ▶▶ ***NO*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ クリア ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

3 **Press and hold** Y! ▶▶ ***Save*** **or** ***Mirror save*** ▶▶ ■

All shot images are saved.

Tip

- You can set image size only to *WQVGA* or *QVGA*.

Add Frames to Images

1 **[Photo Viewfinder]** ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Select frame*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Select a folder** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Select a frame** ▶▶ ■

2 **Compose image in the frame** ▶▶ ■

3 ■

Tip

- Frame shooting can only be used when the camera mode is Photo and the image size is *VGA* or lower.

7 Camera

Auto Timer

● Auto Timer returns to OFF after shooting.

1 **[Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ▶▶ [camera key] ▶▶ *Auto timer* ▶▶ [■]**

2 ***ON* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter time ▶▶ [■]**

3 **Frame image in Viewfinder ▶▶ [■]**

Countdown starts and Camera Indicator flashes. When five seconds remain, countdown tone starts and Camera Indicator flashes rapidly.

■To Stop Auto Timer

▶▶ [mail key]/[クリア]

■To Shoot Video

▶▶ [■]

Video shooting ends.

4 [■]

Tip

- To shoot manually during Auto Timer countdown, press [■].

More Features

Advanced

After Continuous Shooting

❖ View Images

❖ Save One Frame

❖ Select Frames to Save

❖ Save as Animation

❖ Attach to S! Mail

(☛ P. 7-14)

Add Frames

❖ Change Frame before Saving Image

(☛ P. 7-14)

Customize

Continuous Shooting

❖ Set Interval/Frame Number for Continuous Shooting

(☛ P. 13-33)

Shooting Still Images/Videos

Start Here

【Photo Viewfinder】 .... P. 7-5, P. 7-6
【Video Viewfinder】 .... P. 7-8

Change Camera Settings

【Photo Viewfinder】 / 【Video Viewfinder】 ▶▶ ✉ ▶▶ ▶▶ Select a function ▶▶ ▶▶ Select a setting ▶▶ ■

Switch Camera Modes

【Photo Viewfinder】 / 【Video Viewfinder】 ▶▶ 1 ▶▶ Select a Camera Mode ▶▶ ■

Select Image Size

【Photo Viewfinder】 / 【Video Viewfinder】 ▶▶ 2 ▶▶ Select an image size ▶▶ ■

You cannot select this in BI-DO-RI mode.

Select Best Shot/Photo Mode

【Photo Viewfinder】 / 【Video Viewfinder】 ▶▶ 4 ▶▶ Select Best Shot/Photo mode ▶▶ ■

You cannot select this when shooting still images in BI-DO-RI mode.

Adjust Brightness

【Photo Viewfinder】 / 【Video Viewfinder】 ▶▶ 5 ▶▶ Select a brightness level ▶▶ ■

Switch Color Modes

【Photo Viewfinder】 / 【Video Viewfinder】 ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Camera Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Color mode set*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Normal***, ***Sepia*** or ***Monochrome*** ▶▶ ■

You cannot select this in BI-DO-RI mode.

Set Image Stabilizer

【Photo Viewfinder】 ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Image Stabilizer*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Auto*** ▶▶ ■

You cannot set this during Continuous shooting.

Check Storage Capacity

【Photo Viewfinder】 / 【Video Viewfinder】 ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Memory info*** ▶▶ ■

Change Recording Type

【Video Viewfinder】 ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Movie type set*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Normal***, ***Video*** or ***Voice*** ▶▶ ■

Using Still Images/Videos

Start Here

【Photo Preview】window .... P. 7-5, P. 7-6
【Video Preview】window .... P. 7-8

Attach Image to S! Mail

【Photo Preview】window ▶▶ [✉] ▶▶ ***Attach image*** ▶▶ [■] (▶▶ ***Attach mail*** or ***QVGA scale down*** ▶▶ [■]) ▶▶ Compose and send S! Mail

- To Paste Captured Still Image in Message Text
  ▶▶ *Insert image* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *Insert mail* or *Add Art scale down* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Compose and send S! Mail

You can only attach images as they are when image size for *Attach image* is VGA or lower and images size for *Insert image* is QVGA.

Attach Video to S! Mail

【Video Preview】window ▶▶ [✉] ▶▶ Compose and send S! Mail

Depending on the set image size, you may not be able to attach to mail.

Open Saved Files

[■] ▶▶ ***Data Folder*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***My Picture*** or ***Videos*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Camera*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a file ▶▶ [■]

See P. 9-3 for video playback window and P. 9-4 for available keys during playback.

View Mirror Image

【Photo Preview】window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Mirror display*** or ***Normal display*** ▶▶ [■]

Save Mirror Image

【Photo Preview】window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Mirror save*** ▶▶ [■]

Set Image as Wallpaper

【Photo Preview】window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Set as display*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Stand-by display*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a layout ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Check preview ▶▶ [■]

Can only be set when in Photo mode and the image size is *VGA* or lower.

Set Video on Standby

【Video Preview】window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Set as stand-by*** ▶▶ [■]

Edit Title (Video)

【Video Preview】window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Edit title*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Edit title ▶▶ [■]

After Continuous Shooting

Start Here

【Thumbnail Preview】window .... P. 7-10

View Images

【Thumbnail Preview】window ▶▶ Select an image ▶▶ [✉]

Press [◐] to switch to the previous/next image.

Save One Frame

【Thumbnail Preview】window ▶▶ Select an image ▶▶ [✉] ▶▶ [■]

Select Frames to Save

【Thumbnail Preview】window ▶▶ Select an image ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Repeat as needed ▶▶ [Y!] ▶▶ ***Save*** or ***Mirror save*** ▶▶ [■]

To deselect an image, scroll to image and press [■].

Save as Animation

【Thumbnail Preview】window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Store all&anime*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Save*** or ***Mirror save*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a destination ▶▶ [■]

Attach to S! Mail

【Thumbnail Preview】window ▶▶ Select images to send ▶▶ [✉] ▶▶ [✉] ▶▶ ***Attach image*** ▶▶ [■] (▶▶ ***Attach mail/QVGA scale down*** ▶▶ [■]) ▶▶ Compose and send S! Mail

- To Past Captured Still Image in Message Text

  ▶▶ Select images to send ▶▶ [✉] ▶▶ [✉] ▶▶ *Insert image* ▶▶ [■] (▶▶ *Insert mail/Add Art scale down* ▶▶ [■]) ▶▶ Compose and send S! Mail

You can only insert images as they are when the image size is QVGA.

Add Frames

Start Here

【Photo Preview】window .... P. 7-6

Change Frame before Saving Image

【Photo Preview】window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Change frame*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a frame ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [■]

Frame shooting can only be used when the camera mode is Photo and the image size is *VGA* or lower.

TV

8

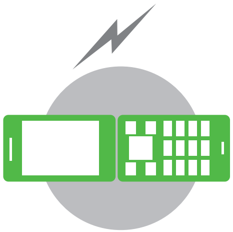
About TV

Handset supports One Seg Digital TV.

● One Seg is available only in Japan. Because other countries use different broadcast systems and frequencies, watching One Seg Digital TV is not possible outside of Japan.

One Seg

One Seg is a digital TV broadcasting service for mobile devices. It uses one segment of the terrestrial digital band to deliver TV and data broadcasts, to your handset.



Watch TV in Widescreen

Data Broadcasts

Enjoy data broadcasts while watching TV. Access program-related information and even participate in the program (P. 8-5).

Record Programs

Record a program on memory card while viewing it and enjoy it again at a later time (P. 8-7).

View/Record Timer

Book programs you want to view/record. Program Guide can be used for booking programs (P. 8-9).

Quick Info

Senders and subjects of incoming messages can be checked while watching TV (P. 13-6).

Precautions

● Never watch TV while riding a bicycle, motorcycle, or driving a car. Doing so may distract you, creating the risk of accident. Even while walking, pay attention to the traffic around you. Be especially careful at railway crossings and pedestrian crosswalks.

● TV image/sound may be affected if a call or message is received while watching TV.

● TV information (TV links or data you entered in Data Broadcast Mode) saved on handset cannot be transferred to another handset when you change your handset to another model or when it is repaired. Keep a memo of necessary information.

● You cannot use TV if USIM Card is not inserted in handset or if your contract with SoftBank has expired.

● Handset has a built-in TV Antenna. Change the orientation of handset, keep it away from/close to your body or move to a different place to improve signal reception. Keep handset open while watching TV.

- TV image/sound may deteriorate or signal reception may become impossible in the following areas:
  - Areas far from signal towers
  - Mountain areas or places beside tall buildings
  - In tunnels, underground malls or buildings with a lot of signal obstructions
- For more information on One Seg services, visit the following website:
  The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting
  From PC: http://www.dpa.or.jp/
  From handset: http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/ (Japanese)

When You First Activate TV

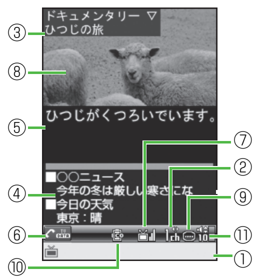
A confirmation window about operations in Landscape view (widescreen mode) appears.
Read through the content, press ■, select ***YES***, and then press ■.
If you select ***NO***, this window no longer appears from the next time.

When a Call Arrives While Using TV

When a call arrives or alarm activates while using TV, TV is interrupted to receive the call, etc. TV resumes after the interrupting function ends.

TV Windows





①	Quick Info Information about messages received while watching TV is shown in tickers (P. 13-6).
②	Channel (Remote Control No.)
③	Program Title
④	Data Broadcast
⑤	Subtitles
⑥	TV View Mode Image Mode Data Broadcast Mode
⑦	Signal Strength Strong Moderate Weak Out of Broadcasting Area
⑧	Image
⑨	Receiving Subtitle Information Subtitles Available
⑩	Eco Mode Eco Mode Active
⑪	Volume

Configure channel settings for your area and save stations to a channel list.

1 ■ ▶▶ ***TV*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Channel Settings*** ▶▶ ■

2 ***Select area*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Select area** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Select prefecture or city** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

Stations for the area are saved to a channel list.

Tip

- If signals from stations of the selected area are difficult to receive, search for stations using the *Automatic* option.

More Features

Advanced

Channel Settings

- Save Stations to a Channel List Automatically
- Save Stations of a Different Area to a Channel List
- Switch Channel Lists

(☞ P. 8-11)

Customize

Channel List

- Edit Title
- Delete a Channel List
- Assign Channels to Remote Control Numbers
- Delete a Channel

(☞ P. 13-28)

Other Settings

- Reset Channel Settings

(☞ P. 13-31)

1 [■] ▶▶ ***TV*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Watch TV*** ▶▶ [■]



TV Window

2 **Use Keypad to select a channel**

Press [*] for channel 10, [0] for channel 11, and [#] for channel 12.

■To Change Next/Previous Channel
▶▶ [◐]

■To Automatically Search for Receivable Stations
▶▶ Press and hold [◐]
Press [✉] or [クリア] to stop station search.

3 [⌒] **to end TV** ▶▶ [▯] **to select *YES*** ▶▶ [■]

- Follow the same step to end TV in Portrait view.
- Alternatively, press and hold [クリア] to end TV.

Tip

- While Manner Mode is set, TV volume is set to 0 when an earphone is not connected. Adjust the volume with [▯].

Available Functions

Adjust Volume	[▯] or [▲]/[▼]
Mute	[クリア]
Toggle Portrait/ Landscape	[■] or press and hold [9]
Toggle Windows*	Press and hold [✓] Windows toggle as follows: Data Broadcast → Image & Data Broadcast → Image & Subtitles & Data Broadcast

* Available while watching TV in Portrait view (in Data Broadcast Mode)

Data Broadcasts (Japanese)

Data broadcasts are available while watching TV in Portrait view. Access various kinds of program-related and other information in Data Broadcast Mode.

1 **[TV] window** ▶▶ [✓]



Data Broadcast Mode Window

Data Broadcast Mode is activated. Access the Internet from a link to view pages relating to the current program.

■To Return to Image Mode
▶▶ [✓]

Available Functions

Select a Link	[key]
Confirm Selection of a Link	[key]
Switch Pages	[key]
Jumping to Previous Page	クリア
Toggle Windows	Press and hold [key] Windows toggle as follows: Data Broadcast → Image & Data Broadcast → Image & Subtitles & Data Broadcast

Note

- Viewing data broadcast information requires no fees. However, accessing Internet links will incur transmission fees.
- Data broadcasts are unavailable in Landscape view.

Program Guide

- Use Program Guide to set timer to record/activate programs.
- Activate TV from Program Guide.
- Before first using Program Guide, configure initial settings and agree to the terms of use.

1 [key] ▶▶ ***TV*** ▶▶ [key] ▶▶ ***Program Guide*** ▶▶ [key]

See Program Guide help for further operations.

More Features

Advanced

Watching TV

- Show Program Information
- Adjust Brightness
- Switch Main & Sub Audio
- Switch Audio Channels
- Show Current Channel List Information
- Add Current Station to Channel List
- Select a Program

(☞ P. 8-11)

Data Broadcasts

- Reload Page Accessed from Data Broadcast
- Check Certificate for SSL Page
- Exit Page and Return to Data Broadcast

(☞ P. 8-12)

TV Link

- Save TV Links
- Access Pages/Information from TV Links
- Show Details of a TV Link
- Show Number of Saved TV Links
- Delete TV Links

(☞ P. 8-12)

Customize

Image & Sound

- Set Subtitle Display
- Show/Hide Icons in Landscape View
- Dim Backlight (Battery Saving)
- Backlight Always On for TV
- Backlight Time for TV
- Sound Output When Handset Closed

(☞ P. 13-29)

Data Broadcasts

- Set Image Download On/Off
- Enable/Disable Sound Effects
- Ask Before Web Connection

(☞ P. 13-30)

Recording Programs

TV programs can be recorded on memory card while you are watching them.

● Data broadcasts are not saved with recording.

1 **[TV] window ▶▶ Press and hold [✉]**

Recording starts.

■To Capture a Still Image

▶▶ [✉]

Captured still images are saved to TV folder in Data Folder.

2 [✉]

Recording ends.

■When Memory Becomes Full

Recording ends and the recorded portion is saved.

Note

- Channels cannot be changed during recording.
- Recording certain programs is restricted. If a restriction is activated while recording a program, recording automatically ends, and the part that has been recorded so far is saved.
- When [icon] appears to indicate handset is out of the broadcasting area, recording is paused. When the signal strength recovers to weak or better, recording automatically resumes.
- Recordings that you make are for personal use only. Other uses require the permission of the copyright holder.

Playing Programs

1 [■] ▶▶ ***Data Folder*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***TV*** ▶▶ [■]

2 ***Video*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***microSD*** ▶▶ [■]



Recorded Program List Window

■To View Captured Still Images

▶▶ ***Image*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ [■]

3 Select a file ▶▶ ■



Recorded Program Playback Window

■**To Stop Playback**

▶▶ クリア

Tip

- If a program was stopped partway through, resume playback from that point. Select *YES* and press ■.

Available Functions

Pause/Play	✉
Adjust Volume	⬍ or ▲/▼
Mute	Y!
Fast Play	⬌
Frame Forward	▶ during pause
Skip by 30 Seconds	Press and hold ⬌

More Features

Advanced

Recording Programs

- Edit Title of a Recorded Program
- Reset Title of a Recorded Program
- Switch Views of Recorded Program List Window
- Check Information on a Recorded Program
- Check Volume of Recorded Programs
- Delete Recorded Programs

(☞ P. 8-13)

Playing Programs

- Specify Starting Point

(☞ P. 8-14)

Customize

Recording Programs

- Continue/End Recording at Low Battery

(☞ P. 13-30)

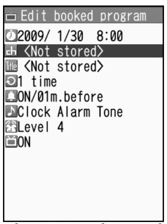
Setting View Timer

1 ■ ▶▶ ***TV*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Booking Program List*** ▶▶ ■



Booking Program List Window

2 📷 ▶▶ ***New*** ▶▶ ■



View Timer Setting Window

3 ⏱ ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Enter date*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Enter date and time** ▶▶ ■

■To Select a Date from Calendar

▶▶ ***Choose date*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a date ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter time ▶▶ ■

4 ch ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Select a channel** ▶▶ ■

5 🔔 ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON, ON/Set time*** **or** ***OFF*** ▶▶ ■ **(** ▶▶ **Select a time** ▶▶ ■**)**

6 ✉

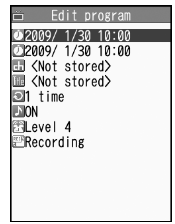
Setting Record Timer

1 ■ ▶▶ ***TV*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Timer Recording List*** ▶▶ ■



Timer Recording List Window

2 📷 ▶▶ ***New*** ▶▶ ■



Record Timer Setting Window

3 ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Enter date*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Enter date and time to start recording** ▶▶ ■

4 ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Enter date*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Enter date and time to end recording** ▶▶ ■

■**To Select a Date from Calendar**

▶▶ ***Choose date*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a date ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter time ▶▶ ■

5 ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Select a channel** ▶▶ ■

6 ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** **or** ***OFF*** ▶▶ ■

7 (▶▶ ***YES*** **or** ***YES (confirm once)*** ▶▶ ■)

When the Set Time Comes

View Timer:
The alarm sounds for about five minutes, and the start date and time, channel, program title and animation appear in Display. Press any key to stop the alarm tone.
Record Timer:
One minute before the recording start time, the alarm sounds for about two seconds. After the start date and time, end date and time, channel, program title and animation appear in Display, TV window opens. Then, recording starts at the set start time.

Note

- You cannot set a timer start date and time that is 1 minute from the present time.

More Features

Advanced

View/Record Timer

- Select a Timer Alarm Tone
- Enter Title of Booked Program
- Set Timer Repeat
- Set Timer Alarm Volume
- Activate TV Directly from Timer Alarm Notification Window
- Set Priority When TV & MUSIC Group Function is Active
- Edit Timer Settings
- Sort Booked Program List
- Delete Booked Programs
- Check Volume of Recorded Programs
- Check Result of Timer Recording

(☞ **P. 8-14**)

Channel Settings

Save Stations to a Channel List Automatically

■ ▶▶ *TV* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Channel Settings* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Automatic* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter title ▶▶ ■

Save Stations of a Different Area to a Channel List

■ ▶▶ *TV* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Channel List* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Not stored* ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ *Channel setting* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Select area* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select area ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select prefecture or city ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■

Switch Channel Lists

■ ▶▶ *TV* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Channel List* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a channel list ▶▶ ■

Watching TV

Start Here

【TV】 window .... P. 8-5

Show Program Information

【TV】 window ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ *Program info* ▶▶ ■

Adjust Brightness

【TV】 window ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ *Display setting* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Brightness* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a level ▶▶ ■

Switch Main & Sub Audio

【TV】 window ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ *Sound* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Main/Sub sound* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an audio output option ▶▶ ■

Switch Audio Channels

【TV】 window ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ *Sound* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Sound switch* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an audio channel ▶▶ ■

Available when there is more than one audio channel.

Show Current Channel List Information

【TV】 window ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ *Channel* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Channel info* ▶▶ ■

Add Current Station to Channel List

【TV】 window ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ *Channel* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Add channel* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■

Use this procedure when you find a new station by holding down ▣.

Select a Program

【TV】window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Channel*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Select service*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a service (program) ▶▶ [■]

Available when more than one service (program) is broadcast from the same station.

Data Broadcasts

Start Here

【Data Broadcast Mode】window
.... P. 8-5

Reload Page Accessed from Data Broadcast

【Data Broadcast Mode】window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Data broadcast*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Re-read*** ▶▶ [■]

Check Certificate for SSL Page

【Data Broadcast Mode】window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Data broadcast*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Show certificate*** ▶▶ [■]

Exit Page and Return to Data Broadcast

【Data Broadcast Mode】window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Data broadcast*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Back to data BC*** ▶▶ [■]

TV Link

Start Here

【Data Broadcast Mode】window
.... P. 8-5

Save TV Links

【Data Broadcast Mode】window ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

Some TV links may have expiration dates.

Access Pages/Information from TV Links

[■] ▶▶ ***TV*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***TV Link*** ▶▶ [■]

Types of TV links are indicated by the following icons:

- Memo information
- Data broadcast site
- Internet content

Show Details of a TV Link

[■] ▶▶ ***TV*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***TV Link*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a TV link ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Display detail*** ▶▶ [■]

Show Number of Saved TV Links

[■] ▶▶ ***TV*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***TV Link*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***No. of TV link*** ▶▶ [■]

Delete TV Links

[■] ▶▶ *TV* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *TV Link* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a TV link ▶▶ [📷]

- To Select *Delete this* ▶▶ *Delete this* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]
- To Select *Delete selected* ▶▶ *Delete selected* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select TV links ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [✉] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]
- To Select *Delete all* ▶▶ *Delete all* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]

Recording Programs

Start Here

【Recorded Program List】 window

.... P. 8-7

Edit Title of a Recorded Program

【Recorded Program List】 window ▶▶ Select a program ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ *Edit title* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Edit title ▶▶ [■]

Reset Title of a Recorded Program

【Recorded Program List】 window ▶▶ Select a program ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ *Initialize title* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]

Switch Views of Recorded Program List Window

【Recorded Program List】 window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ *Switch list* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *Title* or *Title + image* ▶▶ [■]

Check Information on a Recorded Program

【Recorded Program List】 window ▶▶ Select a program ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ *Show info* ▶▶ [■]

Check Volume of Recorded Programs

【Recorded Program List】 window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ *Check memory* ▶▶ [■]

Delete Recorded Programs

【Recorded Program List】 window ▶▶ Select a program ▶▶ [📷]

- To Select *Delete this* ▶▶ *Delete this* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]
- To Select *Delete all* ▶▶ *Delete all* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]
- To Select *Multiple-choice* ▶▶ *Multiple-choice* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select files ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ *Delete* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]

Playing Programs

Start Here

【Recorded Program Playback】 window .... P. 8-8

Specify Starting Point

【Recorded Program Playback】 window ▶▶ ✉ ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Location*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ⇔ to specify point ▶▶ ■

View/Record Timer

Start Here

【Booking Program List】 window .. P. 8-9
【View Timer Setting】 window ... P. 8-9
【Timer Recording List】 window .... P. 8-9
【Record Timer Setting】 window ... P. 8-9

Select a Timer Alarm Tone

【View Timer Setting】 window ▶▶ ♪ ▶▶ ■ (▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a sub folder ▶▶ ■) ▶▶ Select an alarm tone ▶▶ ■

Enter Title of Booked Program

【View Timer Setting】 window/【Record Timer Setting】 window ▶▶ Title ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter program title ▶▶ ■

Set Timer Repeat

【View Timer Setting】 window/【Record Timer Setting】 window ▶▶ ⟲ ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***1 time***, ***Daily*** or ***Select day*** ▶▶ ■

When *Select day* is specified, select days of the week and press ✉.

Set Timer Alarm Volume

【View Timer Setting】 window/【Record Timer Setting】 window ▶▶ 🔊 ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ↕ to adjust volume ▶▶ ■

Activate TV Directly from Timer Alarm Notification Window

【View Timer Setting】 window ▶▶ 📺 ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ▶▶ ■

When *ON* is set, press ■ twice and select *YES* from Alarm Notification window to activate TV and watch the booked program.

Set Priority When TV & MUSIC Group Function is Active

【Record Timer Setting】 window ▶▶ REC ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Recording*** or ***Operation preferred*** ▶▶ ■

When *Recording* is set, the function in operation is interrupted/ended, and recording starts. When *Operation preferred* is set, a confirmation window asking whether to start recording appears.

Edit Timer Settings

【Booking Program List】 window/【Timer Recording List】 window ▶▶ Select a booked program ▶▶ ✉ ▶▶ Edit each item ▶▶ ✉

8 TV

Sort Booked Program List

【Booking Program List】 window/【Timer Recording List】 window ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Sort*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a criterion ▶▶ [■]

Delete Booked Programs

【Booking Program List】 window/【Timer Recording List】 window ▶▶ Select a program ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Delete*** ▶▶ [■]

- To Select *Delete this*
  ▶▶ *Delete this* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]
- To Select *Delete selected*
  ▶▶ *Delete selected* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select programs ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]
- To Select *Delete all*
  ▶▶ *Delete all* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]

Select *Delete past* to delete old bookings.

Check Volume of Recorded Programs

【Timer Recording List】 window ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Memory info*** ▶▶ [■]

Check Result of Timer Recording

[■] ▶▶ ***TV*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Result Timer Rec*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select an entry ▶▶ [■]

Press [■] to play the recorded program.

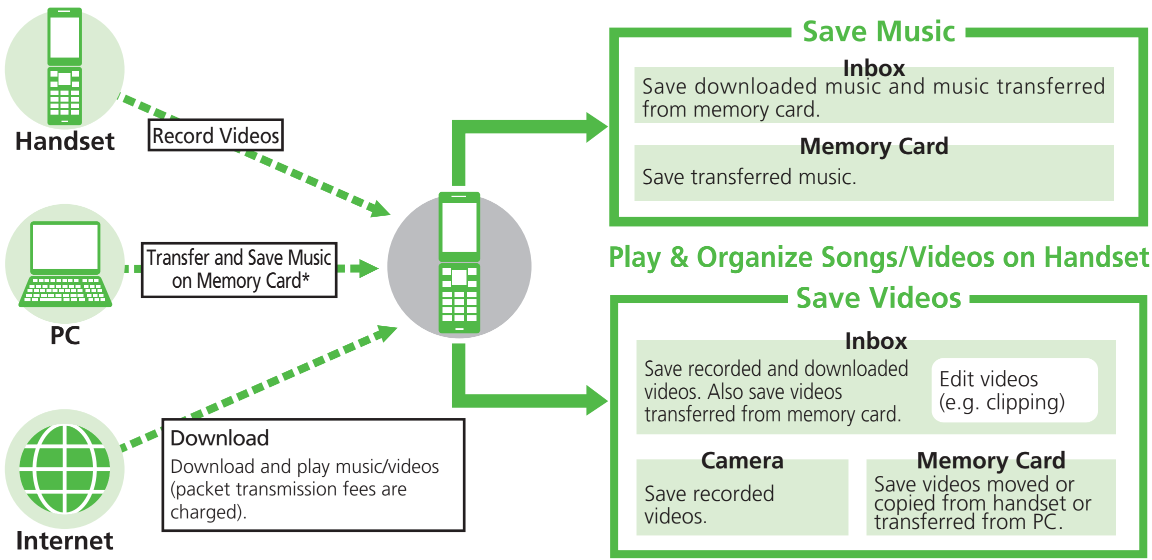
Music Player & S! Appli

9

About Music Player

Use Music Player to play and organize songs on handset.

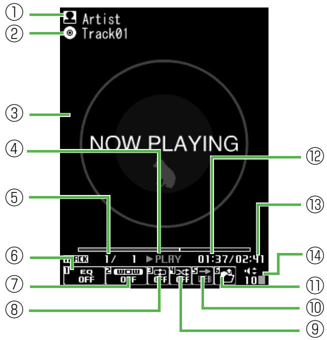
- Access the Internet to download music.
- Videos can also be played with Music Player.
- You may not be able to play music/videos depending on the file format.
- You cannot play music/videos when the battery is low and handset is closed.
- Play will pause when there is an alarm notification, a call arrives, etc.



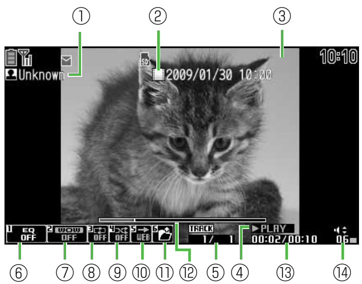
* Save to the folder below when saving music files to memory card from a PC.
¥PRIVATE¥MYFOLDER¥My Items¥Music

Playback Windows

Normal Screen Mode



Full Screen Mode (Video Playback Only)



①	Artist Name <Creator>*
②	Title
③	Playback Image <Video>*
④	Playback Status PLAY Play / PAUSE Pause FF Fast Forward / REW Rewind SLOW Slow Play / PLAY Fast Play
⑤	Current Track Number/Total Number of Tracks in Folder (Current File Number/Total Number of Files in Folder)
⑥	Equalizer EQ OFF OFF Bass Bass Booster / Treble Treble Booster Treble Reducer Treble Reducer Pop Jazz Rock Techno Classical For each genre of music Speech For voice playback
⑦	Sound Effect WOW OFF OFF WOW +1 WOW +2 WOW +3 Bass compensation WOW (S) Surround WOW +1(S) WOW +2(S) WOW +3(S) Bass compensation/ Surround WOW User1 WOW User2 WOW User3 User settings
⑧	Repeat Mode OFF / Repeat All Repeat One

⑨	Shuffle Mode ON / OFF
⑩	To Web Connect to the URL in the song.
⑪	Song/file Selection
⑫	Playback Position indicates the current playback position. You can move the position with during pause.
⑬	Elapsed Playback Time/Total Playback Time
⑭	Volume

* Descriptions in < > apply to video playback.

Downloading Music

● Check the fees, expiration date, etc. on the download site.

1 ■ ▸▸ ***MUSIC*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Download Music*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***YES*** ▸▸ ■

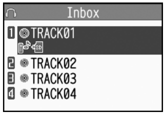
■**To Search for Songs to Download**
▸▸***Search Music***▸▸■ ▸▸***YES***▸▸■

2 Follow onscreen instructions

Playing Music

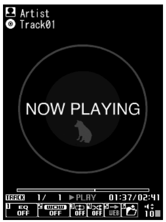
1 ■ ▶▶ ***MUSIC*** ▶▶ ■

2 **Select a folder** ▶▶ ■



Song List Window

3 **Select a song** ▶▶ ■



Music Player Playback Window
(Video Player Playback Window)

Tip

- Press and hold ▼ to activate Music Player from Standby. Music Player plays songs from the position where the last playback was stopped.
- To play videos downloaded or recorded with camera:
  ■ ▶▶ *Data Folder* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Videos* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Specify a video to play

Available Keys during Playback

◎While Handset is Open

Pause/Play	■
Adjust Volume	↕ or ▲/▼
Play from Beginning Play Previous Song/Video	◀ or press and hold ▲
Play Next Song/Video	▶ or press and hold ▼
Rewind	Press and hold ◀
Fast Forward	Press and hold ▶
Move Playback Position	◀▶ during pause
Select a Song/File	Y!/6
Set Equalizer	1*
Set Sound Effect	2*
Set Repeat Mode	3*
Set Shuffle Mode	4*
Access the Internet	5
Toggle Normal Screen/ Full Screen	9
End Playback	クリア

* The setting toggles each time you press the key.

◎While Handset is Closed

Adjust Volume	▲/▼
Play from Beginning Play Previous Song	Press and hold ▲
Play Next Song	Press and hold ▼

Using Playlists

Use playlists to play songs by genre or by artist, or gather your favorite songs and arrange them in your favorite order.

● Songs saved on memory card can also be added to playlists.

Creating a Playlist

1 ■ ▶▶ ***MUSIC*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Playlist*** ▶▶ ■



Playlist List Window

2 📷 ▶▶ ***Create playlist*** ▶▶ ■

3 **Select a folder** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Select a song** ▶▶ ■

Repeat this step to specify other songs.

4 **When all songs are specified** ⇨ ✉ ⇨ **Enter playlist name** ⇨ ■

■**To Start Playing the Playlist**

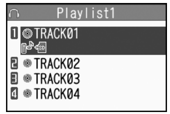
▶▶ ■

Playing a Playlist

1 **[Playlist List] window** ▶▶ **Select a playlist** ▶▶ ■

■**To Play a Playlist from the Beginning**

▶▶ Select a playlist ▶▶ ✉



Playlist Song List Window

■**To Play All Songs**

▶▶ ***All tracks (phone)*** ▶▶ ■ (twice)

2 **Select a song** ▶▶ ■

More Features

Advanced

Playing Music

- Resume Playback
- Check Song Details
- Repeat
- Use a Different Function While Playing Music

(☛ P. 9-10)

Organizing Songs

- Set a Song as Ringtone
- Search for Songs
- Change Order of Songs
- Check Volume of Saved Music

(☛ P. 9-10)

Playlists

- Add Tracks to Playlist
- Change Track Order
- Delete Tracks from Playlist
- Edit a Playlist Name
- Copy a Playlist
- Check Playlist Information
- Delete Playlists

(☛ P. 9-11)

Customize

Playback Window

- Change Design
- Set Image Display Size

(☛ P. 13-34)

About S! Appli

S! Appli are applications designed for SoftBank handsets. Download games and other applications.

◎About Lifestyle-Appli

Handset includes Osaifu-Keitai®-compatible S! Appli "Lifestyle-Appli" (P. 10-3). Like other S! Appli, you can manage and change settings for Lifestyle-Appli.

◎About Network S! Appli

Since network S! Appli require network connection, transmission fees are incurred. A confirmation window may appear when an application is connecting to the network. Follow onscreen instructions.

Tip

- For information on transmission fees, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-48).

◎About License Information

To check Java™ and JBlend™ license information:
▣ ▶▶ *S! Appli* ▶▶ ▣ ▶▶ *Information* ▶▶ ▣

Downloading S! Appli

1 ▣ ▶▶ ***S! Appli*** ▶▶ ▣ ▶▶ ***S! Appli List*** ▶▶ ▣ ▶▶ ***Download S! App*** ▶▶ ▣ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ▣

2 **Select an S! Appli ▶▶ ▣ (twice)**

■To Activate S! Appli Right Away

▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ▣ ▶▶ Select an S! Appli ▶▶ ▣

■To Activate S! Appli Later

▶▶ *NO* ▶▶ ▣

Tip

- For how to download Lifestyle-Appli, see P. 10-3.
- See S! Appli's Help menu or the download site for operational information.

Note

- Check the battery level before downloading S! Appli. If the battery level is low, download may fail.
- If you replace USIM Card due to damage or loss, downloaded S! Appli are no longer available.
- If you perform the following operations when using an S! Appli that has been moved to memory card, you may become unable to use the moved S! Appli.
  - Initialize handset, and then download the same S! Appli (Setting information for the appli has been deleted, and you would need to download the same S! Appli again)
  - Download the same S! Appli with memory card left uninserted
  - Download the same S! Appli with different memory card left inserted

  S! Appli downloaded at this time are saved as new files in handset. When using S! Appli, you can use S! Appli saved as new files in handset as they are, or after again moving them to memory card.

Activating S! Appli

1 ■ ▶▶ ***S! Appli*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***S! Appli List*** ▶▶ ■



S! Appli List Window

2 **Select an application** ▶▶ ■

■To End S! Appli

▶▶ [⌒] ▶▶ ***End*** ▶▶ ■

Tip

- S! Appli is paused when a call arrives. S! Appli resumes when the call ends.

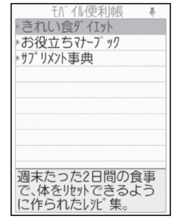
About モバイル便利帳 (Mobile Organizer)

モバイル便利帳 (Mobile Organizer) (Japanese) is an S! Appli allowing you to search useful lifestyle information from pre-installed contents. モバイル便利帳 (Mobile Organizer) contains the following contents.

Contents	Entries	Publisher
週末カンタンきれい食ダイエット (Weekend Clean Diet)	67	小学館
お役立ちマナーブック (Useful Etiquette)	approx. 800	旺文社
日経ヘルスサプリメント事典2008年版 (Nikkei Health Book of Supplements 2008 Edition)	approx. 1,000	日経BP社

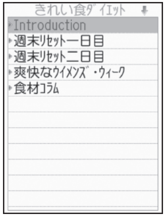
Activating モバイル便利帳 (Mobile Organizer)

1 ■ ▶▶ ***S! Appli*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***S! Appli List*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***モバイル便利帳*** ▶▶ ■



モバイル便利帳 (Mobile Organizer) List Window

2 **Select a content ▶▶ ■**



Contents Top Menu Window

Tip

- You can also activate from a Shortcut (P. 2-5).

Searching Mobile Organizer Contents

Search for entries in pre-installed contents by selecting headwords one after another.

<Example> Viewing information for Clean Diet

1 **Select an entry ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ ■**



モバイル便利帳 (Mobile Organizer) Window

More Features

Advanced

S! Appli

- Check S! Appli Properties
- Check Memory Status
- Delete S! Appli
- Change Font Size of モバイル便利帳 (Mobile Organizer)

(☛ P. 9-11)

Osaifu-Keitai®

- Check Lifestyle-Appli Properties
- Check Memory Status
- Delete a Lifestyle-Appli
- Edit Call Remote Lock Numbers
- Delete Call Remote Lock Numbers

(☛ P. 10-21)

Customize

When Running S! Appli

- Set Sound Volume
- Set Vibration
- Set Backlight
- Set Blinking of Backlight
- Allow/Prohibit Network Connection
- Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Write Personal Information
- Reset Security Settings

(☛ P. 13-34)

S! Appli Settings

- Reset S! Appli Settings
- Delete All S! Appli

(☛ P. 13-35)

Osaifu-Keitai®

- Set illumination for IC Card
- Delete all Lifestyle-Appli

(☛ P. 13-36)

Music Player

Start Here

Playing Music

Resume Playback

■ ▶▶ *MUSIC* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Resume play* ▶▶ ■

Check Song Details

【Music Player Playback】window ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ *File property* ▶▶ ■

You can view information of the file.

Repeat

【Music Player Playback】window ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ *Action setting* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Repeat setting* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *All repeat* or *Single repeat* ▶▶ ■

Use a Different Function While Playing Music

【Music Player Playback】window ▶▶ ⌒ ▶▶ *Switch to BGM* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Activate another function

Press and hold ▯ in Standby during background music playback to end Music Player.

Organizing Songs

Set a Song as Ringtone

【Song List】window ▶▶ Select a song ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ *Select ring tone* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ ■

Search for Songs

【Song List】window/【Playlist List】window/【Playlist Song List】window ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ *Search* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Title* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter condition ▶▶ ■

Select a song from search results and press ■ to play it.

Change Order of Songs

【Song List】window/【Playlist Song List】window ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ *Sort* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a criterion ▶▶ ■

Check Volume of Saved Music

【Song List】window ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ *Memory info* ▶▶ ■

Playlists

Add Tracks to Playlist

【Playlist Song List】window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Edit playlist*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Add music*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select songs ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [mail] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

The songs you specified are added at the end of the playlist.

Change Track Order

【Playlist Song List】window ▶▶ Select a song ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Edit playlist*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Sort playlist*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a position ▶▶ [■]

Delete Tracks from Playlist

【Playlist Song List】window ▶▶ Select a song ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Edit playlist*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Release settings*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Release this***, ***Release selected*** or ***Release all*** ▶▶ [■] (▶▶ Select songs ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [mail] or enter Security code ▶▶ [■]) ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

Edit a Playlist Name

【Playlist List】window ▶▶ Select a playlist ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Edit playlist name*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Edit playlist name ▶▶ [■]

Copy a Playlist

【Playlist List】window ▶▶ Select a playlist ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Copy to playlist*** ▶▶ [■]

Check Playlist Information

【Playlist List】window ▶▶ Select a playlist ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Playlist info*** ▶▶ [■]

Delete Playlists

【Playlist List】window ▶▶ Select a playlist ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Delete playlist*** ▶▶ [■]

- To Select *Delete this*
  ▶▶ *Delete this* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]
- To Select *Delete selected*
  ▶▶ *Delete selected* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select playlists ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [mail] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]
- To Select *Delete all*
  ▶▶ *Delete all* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]

S! Appli

Start Here

Check S! Appli Properties

【S! Appli List】window ▶▶ Select an S! Appli ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Properties*** ▶▶ [■]

Check Memory Status

【S! Appli List】window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Memory info*** ▶▶ [■]

Delete S! Appli

【S! Appli List】window ▶▶ Select an S! Appli ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Delete*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

Change Font Size of モバイル便利帳 (Mobile Organizer)

【モバイル便利帳 (Mobile Organizer)】window ▶▶ [Y!] ▶▶ *文字サイズ* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *普通／小* ▶▶ [■]

Tools

10

About Osaifu-Keitai®

"Osaifu-Keitai®" is a range of IC Card-based services used by Osaifu-Keitai® compatible handsets.
Make purchases using e-money or e-ticketing. Hold handset up to a reader/writer to pay for your purchase.

◎Osaifu-Keitai® Terms

Osaifu-Keitai®	A contactless IC Card technology "FeliCa" to read/write data by holding an IC card up to a reader/writer
IC Card	An IC chip embedded in Osaifu-Keitai®-compatible handsets
Lifestyle-Appli	S! Applications to use Osaifu-Keitai®. Some applications are preinstalled.

Tip

- Data saved in IC Card varies by service content and usage history.
  Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli.
  Contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for details.
- Softbank is not liable for damage from accidental loss or alteration of IC Card data or settings.
- IC Card data can be misused if your Osaifu-Keitai® compatible handset is lost or stolen. Softbank is not liable for any resulting damages.

Getting Started

Downloading Lifestyle-Appli

Download Lifestyle-Appli via Internet website.
・Lifestyle-Appli is saved to Data Folder.

▼

Registrations/Settings

Activate Lifestyle-Appli to complete registration or customize settings.
・Make deposit into account, check payment records or balance, etc.

Note

- Keep a copy of service passwords/customer service contact, etc. in a separate place.

Downloading Lifestyle-Appli®

1 ■ ▶▶ ***Tools*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Osaifu-Keitai*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Lifestyle-Appli*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Download LifeApp*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

2 **Select a Lifestyle-Appli** ▶▶ ■ **(twice)**

■**To Activate Lifestyle-Appli Right Away**

▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a Lifestyle-Appli ▶▶ ■

■**To Activate Lifestyle-Appli Later**

▶▶ ***NO*** ▶▶ ■

Note

- Check the battery level before downloading S! Appli. If the battery level is low, download may fail.
- If you replace USIM Card due to damage or loss, downloaded S! Appli are no longer available.

Activating Lifestyle-Appli

1 ■ ▶▶ ***Tools*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Osaifu-Keitai*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Lifestyle-Appli*** ▶▶ ■



Lifestyle-Appli List Window

2 **Select a Lifestyle-Appli** ▶▶ ■

■**To End Lifestyle-Appli**

▶▶ — ▶▶ ***End*** ▶▶ ■

Note

- Keep a copy of service passwords/customer service contact, etc. in a separate place.

Tip

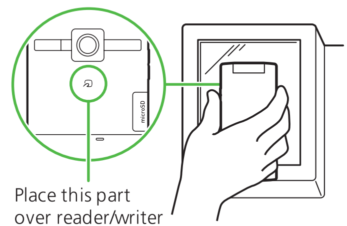
- Lifestyle-Appli is paused when a call arrives. Lifestyle-Appli resumes when the call ends.

Using Osaifu-Keitai®

Reader/Writer Transactions

- There is no need to activate a Lifestyle-Appli during transaction.
- Make sure battery is adequately charged.
- Transactions are possible even when handset power is off or during calls or Internet transmissions.

1 **Hold ᴙ logo up to reader/writer** ▶▶ **Check scan result on reader/writer display**



- Hold handset parallel to reader/writer.Try moving handset around if recognition is slow.

Tools

10

Note

- Softbank is not liable for damages from accidental loss or alteration of IC Card data or settings.

Tip

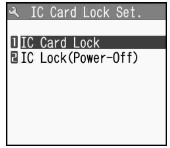
- Data may be unreadable if a metal object, etc. is between logo and reader/writer.

Activating IC Card Lock

Use this function to restrict access to/prevent unauthorized use of Osaifu-Keitai®.

1 ■ ▶▶ ***Tools*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Osaifu-Keitai*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***IC Card Lock Set.*** ▶▶ ■

2 Enter Security code ▶▶ ■



IC Card Lock Setting Window

3 ***IC Card Lock*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** ▶▶ ■

- IC appears in Standby.
- Alternatively, set IC Card Lock by: Press and hold 3 in Standby.

■**To Set Operation of IC Card Lock after Power Off**

▶▶ ***IC Lock (Power-Off)*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Maintain or IC Card Lock ON*** ▶▶ ■

■**To Cancel IC Card Lock**

▶▶ Press and hold 3 in Standby ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■

Remote Lock

Call from a specified phone to activate Call Remote Lock.

◎Saving Numbers to Activate Call Remote Lock

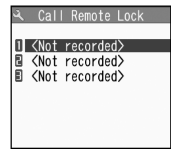
1 ■ ▶▶ ***Tools*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Osaifu-Keitai*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Call Remote Lock*** ▶▶ ■

2 Enter Security code ▶▶ ■

3 ***ON*** ▶▶ ■

■**To Cancel Call Remote Lock**

▶▶ ***OFF*** ▶▶ ■



Call Remote Lock Setting Window

Tools 10

4 ***<Not recorder>*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Enter Phone Numbers** ▶▶ ■

■To save numbers from Phone Book/Redial/Received calls
▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Look-up address*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Phonebook, Redial*** or ***Received Calls*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a number ▶▶ ■

■To save a Payphone number
▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***payphone*** ▶▶ ■

5 ✉

◎Activating Call Remote Lock

1 Using one of the specified phones, call handset

・Send Caller ID.

2 Hang up after handset receives the call

3 Within three minutes, repeat 1 - 2 twice

・After the third Missed Call, IC Card Lock is set; a message announces IC Card Lock activation.

Note

- If series is interrupted by another call, Missed Call count is reset. Start over from the beginning.

More Features

Advanced

Osaifu-Keitai®

- Check Lifestyle-Appli Properties
- Check Memory Status
- Delete a Lifestyle-Appli
- Edit Call Remote Lock Numbers
- Delete Call Remote Lock Numbers

(☛ P. 10-21)

Customize

Osaifu-Keitai®

- Set illumination for IC Card
- Delete all Lifestyle-Appli

(☛ P. 13-36)

Save future events to Schedule. Set alarm to activate at specified time. Saved events can be checked from Schedule Window.

Schedule Window

①
②



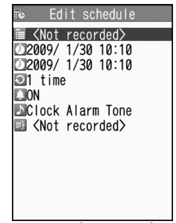
Schedule Window

①	Calendar Blue date: Saturdays Red date: Sundays, public and other holidays Pink date (Background color): Anniversaries __: Today □: Events for the morning ■: Events for the afternoon T: Tasks on To Do List
②	Information Panel Date, day of the week, content type icon, time, and saved content • Content Type Icon (or a user icon) Event Holiday Anniversary Task • Event Repetition Icon Daily event Weekly event Annual event Event for over a day

Saving Events to Schedule

1 ■ ▶▶ ***Tools*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Schedule*** ▶▶ ■

2 ✉ ▶▶ ***Schedule*** ▶▶ ■



Event Edit Window

3 ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Enter content** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Select an icon** ▶▶ ■

4 ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Enter start/end date and time** ▶▶ ■

5 ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***1 time***, ***Daily*** ([D]) or ***Select day*** ([W]) ▶▶ ■

■**To Specify Days of the Week**

▶▶ *Select day* ([W]) ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Put checkmarks to days of the week ▶▶ ✉

6 ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Select an alarm notification option** ▶▶ ■

■**To Activate Alarm Prior to Event**

▶▶ *ON/Set time* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter time

7 ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Select an alarm tone type** ▶▶ ■ (▶▶ **Select a folder** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Select an alarm tone** ▶▶ ■)

You cannot select a folder when *Clock Alarm Tone* or *OFF* is selected.

8 ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Enter alarm notification message** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ✉

◎Alarm Notification Operations

When the set time arrives, alarm sounds and animation appears (on Display and Illumination Panel) for approximately five minutes.

Press any key to stop the alarm tone. Press any key again to end notification message.

Tip

- If the set alarm time arrives during a call, alarm tone sounds through earpiece.
- If a call arrives while the alarm is sounding, the alarm stops.

Adding Holidays/Anniversaries

1 **[Schedule] window** ▶▶ ✉ ▶▶ ***Holiday*** or ***Anniversary*** ▶▶ ■

2 ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Enter year, month and date** ▶▶ ■

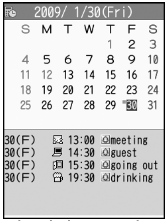
3 ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***1 time*** or ***Annually*** ([Y]) ▶▶ ■

4 ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Enter content** ▶▶ ■

5 ✉

Checking Saved Events

1 ■ ▶▶ ***Tools*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Schedule*** ▶▶ ■

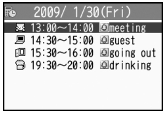


Schedule Window

■**To Toggle between Weekly View and Monthly View**

▶▶ Y!

2 **to select a date with events** ▶▶ ■

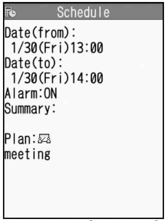


Event List Window

Tools

10

3 Select an event » ■



Event Details Window

Deleting Events

◎To Delete One Event

1 [Event List] window » Select an event » 📷

2 ***Delete*** » ■ » ***Delete this*** » ■ » ***YES*** » ■

◎To Delete Multiple Events

1 [Event List] window » 📷

2 ***Delete*** » ■ » ***Delete selected*** » ■

3 Select an event » ■

Repeat this step to specify other events.

4 ✉ » ***YES*** » ■

◎To Delete All Events Prior to a Specified Date

1 [Schedule] window/[Event List] window » Select a date » /[Event Details] window » 📷

2 ***Delete*** » ■ » ***Delete past*** » ■ » Select an item » ■ » ***YES*** » ■

More Features

Advanced

Schedule

- Sort Events by Icon
- Save User Icons
- Delete User Icons
- Check Number of Saved Events
- Edit an Event
- Copy an Event
- Secret Event
- Delete All Events
- Reset Holidays

(☞ P. 10-21)

Customize

Alarm

- Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time
- Change Alarm Tone

(☞ P. 13-3)

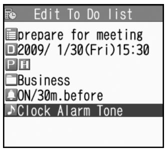
Save tasks to To Do List. Set the alarm to remind you of deadlines.

Saving Tasks

1 ■ » ***Tools*** » ■ » ***To Do List*** » ■ » 📷 » ***New*** » ■

■To Edit a Saved Task

» Select a task » ✉



Task Edit Window

2 ▤ » ■ » **Enter content** » ■

3 D » ■ » ***Enter date*** » ■ » **Enter due date and time** » ■

■To Enter Due Date from Calendar

» ***Choose date*** » ■ » Select a date on Calendar » ■ » Enter time » ■

■To Cancel a Due Date

» ***No date*** » ■

4 P » ■ » **Select a priority level** » ■

5 ▭ » ■ » **Select a category** » ■

6 🔔 » ■ » **Select an alarm notification option** » ■

■To Activate Alarm Prior to Due Time

» ***ON/Set time*** » ■ » Enter time

7 ♪ » ■ » **Select an alarm tone type** » ■ **(** » **Select a folder** » ■ » **Select an alarm tone** » ■**)** » ✉

You cannot select a folder when ***Clock Alarm Tone*** or ***OFF*** is selected.

◎Alarm Notification Operations

When the set time arrives, alarm sounds and animation appears (on Display and Illumination Panel) for approximately five minutes.

Press any key to stop the alarm tone.

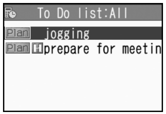
Press any key again to end notification message.

Tip

- If the set alarm time arrives during a call, alarm tone sounds through earpiece.
- If a call arrives while the alarm is sounding, the alarm stops.

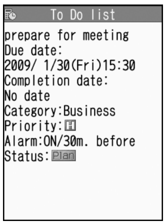
Checking Saved Tasks

1 ■ ▶ ***Tools*** ▶ ■ ▶ ***To Do List*** ▶ ■



Task List Window

2 Select a task ▶ ■



Task Details Window

Tip

- Overdue tasks are indicated by red status icons (e.g. Plan).

Deleting Tasks

◎To Delete One Task

1 [Task List] window ▶ Select a task ▶ 📷

2 ***Delete*** ▶ ■ ▶ ***Delete this*** ▶ ■ ▶ ***YES*** ▶ ■

◎To Delete Multiple Tasks

1 [Task List] window ▶ 📷

2 ***Delete*** ▶ ■ ▶ ***Delete selected*** ▶ ■

3 Select a task ▶ ■

Repeat this step to specify other tasks.

4 ✉ ▶ ***YES*** ▶ ■

◎To Delete All Tasks in *Completion* Status

1 [Task List] window ▶ 📷

2 ***Delete*** ▶ ■ ▶ ***Delete completed*** ▶ ■ ▶ ***YES*** ▶ ■

More Features

Advanced

To Do List

- Sort Tasks by Category
- Change Order of Tasks
- Set Task Status
- Enter a Task Completion Date
- Delete All Tasks

(☞ P. 10-22)

Customize

Alarm

- Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time
- Change Alarm Tone

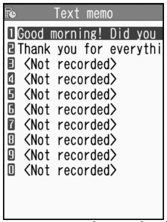
(☞ P. 13-3)

Save short notes or messages as text memos.

- Saved text memos can be inserted in Schedule or in messages.

Saving Text Memos

1 ■ ▶▶ ***Tools*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Text Memo*** ▶▶ ■



Text Memo List Window

2 ***<Not recorded>*** ▶▶ ✉ ▶▶ **Enter content** ▶▶ ■

■To Edit a Saved Text Memo

▶▶ Select a text memo ▶▶ ✉ ▶▶ Edit content ▶▶ ■

Deleting Text Memos

◎To Delete One Text Memo

1 **[Text Memo List] window** ▶▶ **Select a text memo** ▶▶ 📷

2 ***Delete*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Delete this*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

◎To Delete Multiple Text Memos

1 **[Text Memo List] window** ▶▶ 📷

2 ***Delete*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Delete selected*** ▶▶ ■

3 **Select a text memo** ▶▶ ■

Repeat this step to specify other text memos.

4 ✉ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

More Features

Advanced

Text Memo

- Save a Text Memo to Schedule
- Sort Text Memos by Category
- Check Text Memo Information
- Delete All Text Memos

(☞ P. 10-23)

The following two types of voice memos can be recorded with Voice memo:
"Voice memo during a call" to record the other party's voice during a call; and "Voice memo in Standby" to record your voice in Standby.

- Only one entry, either a voice memo during a call or a voice memo in Standby, can be saved on handset. When a new voice memo is recorded, the previously saved entry is overwritten.
- The available recording time is 20 seconds for both types of voice memos.
- See P. 3-4 and P. 3-18 for playing and deleting a recorded voice memo.

Recording the Other Party's Voice

1 Press and hold ▼ during a call

A short beep sounds through the earpiece, and recording starts. When remaining recording time reaches five seconds, a short beep sounds. When recording is finished, two short beeps sound.

■To Stop Recording

▶▶ ■ or press and hold ▼

Recording Your Voice in Standby

1 ■ ▶▶ *Tools* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Voice Memo* ▶▶ ■

2 *YES* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Record your voice

Speak at the microphone when you hear a short beep through the earpiece. When remaining recording time reaches five seconds, a short beep sounds. When recording is finished, two short beeps sound.

■To Stop Recording

▶▶ ■

Tip

- Recording stops automatically when a call arrives, alarm goes off or another function is activated.

1 ■ ▶▶ ***Tools*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Calculator*** ▶▶ ■

2 **Enter numbers with Keypad ▶▶ Enter ＋/－/×/÷ with Multi Selector**

■To Calculate Negative Numbers

▶▶ ◧ ▶▶ 0 - 9 ▶▶ Enter ＋/－/×/÷ with Multi Selector

3 ■

Result appears.

Available Functions

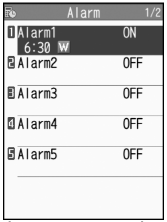
Enter Number	0 - 9
＋ (Add)	◨
－ (Subtract)	◧
× (Multiply)	⬒
÷ (Divide)	⬓
＝ (Equal)	■
Decimal Point	✉
Cancel Calculation	クリア (AC)
Clear Number	クリア (C)

Tip

- If the calculation result exceeds 10 digits, *.E* appears.

Setting Alarm

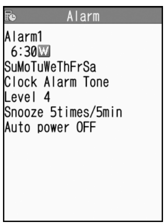
1 ■ » ***Tools*** » ■ » ***Alarm*** » ■



Alarm List Window

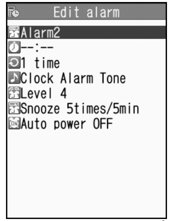
■To Check Previous Alarm Settings

» Select an alarm » ■



Alarm Details Window

2 **Select an alarm** » ✉



Alarm Setting Window

3 (icon) » ■ » **Enter title** » ■

4 (icon) » ■ » **Enter time** » ■

5 (icon) » ■ » ***1 time*, *Daily* (D) or *Select day* (W)** » ■

■To Specify Days of the Week

» ***Select day*** (W) » ■ » Put checkmarks to days of the week » ✉

6 (icon) » ■ » **Select an alarm tone type** » ■ **(» Select a folder** » ■ » **Select an alarm tone** » ■**)**

You cannot select a folder when ***Clock Alarm Tone*** or ***OFF*** is selected.

7 (icon) » ■ » (key) **to adjust volume** » ■

8 (icon) » ■ » ***ON*** » ■ » **Enter number of activation times** » **Enter time interval**

■To Cancel Snooze

» ***OFF*** » ■ » Enter ringing duration

9 (icon) » ■ » ***ON* or *OFF*** » ■ » ✉

◎Alarm Activation Operations

When the set time arrives, alarm is activated and animation appears (on Display and Illumination Panel). When the auto power-on function is set to *ON* in Alarm Setting window, handset is automatically turned on, if it has been off, to activate the alarm.
Press any key to stop the alarm tone.
When Snooze is set to *OFF*, press any key again to cancel the alarm with two short beeps, and return to the window before the alarm activation.
When Snooze is set to *ON*, the alarm sounds repeatedly in the set time interval. Press [⌐] to cancel Snooze with two short beeps.

Tip

- The alarm/snooze cancellation beeps do not sound when ***Keypad sound*** is set to *OFF*.
- Set the auto power-on function to *OFF* in Alarm Setting window and turn off handset, when you are near high-precision electronic devices or devices using weak signals, on an aircraft or in a hospital where handset use is prohibited.
- If a call arrives while the alarm is sounding, the alarm stops.
- If the alarm activation time comes during a call, Snooze does not work even if it is set to *ON*.

Canceling Alarm

1 [Alarm List] window ▶▶ Select an alarm ▶▶ [Y!]

Each time you press [Y!], the alarm toggles between ON and OFF.

Tip

- Alarm settings are retained even if the alarm is canceled.

More Features

Advanced

Alarm
- Cancel All Alarms
- Edit Alarm Settings

(☛ P. 10-24)

Customize

Alarm
- Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time
- Change Alarm Tone

(☛ P. 13-3)

JAN codes and QR codes can be scanned by Bar Code Reader using handset camera.

About JAN & QR Codes

◎JAN Code

A bar code made of vertical lines (bars) with different widths and spaces in between, representing numbers.
Handset can scan 8-digit (JAN8) and 13-digit (JAN13) bar codes.

◎QR Code

A two-dimensional code representing alphanumerics, kanji, kana, or pictographs. Some QR codes are made up of several data areas that are scanned as individual QR codes and then automatically combined as one QR code.

Scanning Bar Codes

● Position handset camera at a distance of 6 to 8 cm from the bar code.

1 ■ ▶▶ ***Tools*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Bar Code Reader*** ▶▶ ■

2 **Frame the bar code in the recognition field**



Bar Code Scanning Window

Scanning starts automatically.
┌, ┐, └ and ┘ indicate the corners of the recognition field.

■To Cancel Scanning
▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***OK*** ▶▶ ■

■To Adjust Zoom
▶▶ ◧ (Zoom out)/◨ (Zoom in)

■To Scan a QR Code Made of Several Data Areas (QR Codes)
▶▶ ***OK*** ▶▶ ■ (twice) ▶▶ Scan a QR code
Repeat this step to scan other QR codes.
Unless all component QR codes are scanned, the scanned data cannot be shown or saved on handset.

3 **Check scanned data**

■To Discard Scanned Data
▶▶ クリア ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

4 📷 ▶▶ ***Store*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***OK*** ▶▶ ■

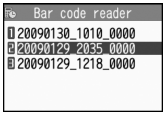
Tip

- A JAN code/QR code must be accurately focused and be enlarged to fill the recognition field.
- Scanning may take a while.
- Some bar codes may not be scanned depending on the size, version or print quality, or due to scratches, stains, damage or the reflection of light.

Tools
10

Checking Scanned Data

1 **[Bar Code Scanning] window ▶▶ [camera key] ▶▶ *Reading data list* ▶▶ [■]**



Scanned Bar Code Data List Window

2 **Select an entry ▶▶ [■]**



Scanned Bar Code Data Details Window

Tip

- Characters that are not supported by Bar Code Reader are replaced with spaces (blanks).

More Features

Advanced

Scanning Bar Codes

- Scan Bar Code during Text Entry

(☞ P. 10-24)

Using Scanned Data

- Make a Call
- Compose a Message
- Access the Internet
- Save to Phone Book
- Save a Bookmark
- Copy Text
- Edit Title of Scanned Data
- Delete Scanned Data

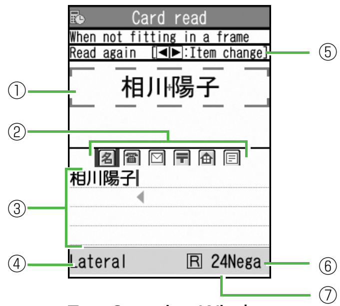
(☞ P. 10-25)

Use Text Reader to scan printed text.

Scan Modes

Card read	Scan name, phone number, e-mail address, postal code, address and memo printed on business cards, and save all scanned data collectively as a Phone Book entry.
Compose message	Scan address, subject or message text, and open Composition (S! Mail) window with the address, subject or message text entered.
URL	Scan URL, and access the page or save the URL to Bookmark.
Mail address	Scan e-mail address, and compose an S! Mail to the address.
Phone number	Scan phone number, and make a call to the number.
Free memo	Scan Japanese or English text, and save the text to Text Memo.

Text Scanning Window



Text Scanning Window

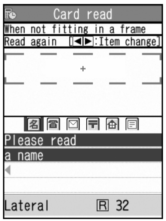
①	Recognition Frame
②	Scan Item Icons Name Phone number E-mail address Postal code Address Memo Address Subject Message text
③	Recognized Text Field
④	Recognition Mode
⑤	Key Guidance
⑥	Negative Mode ***Nega*** appears when ***NEGA/POSI mode*** is set to ***Negative fix***.
⑦	Remaining Number of Characters That Can be Scanned

Scanning Text

● Position handset camera at a distance of 6 to 8 cm from the text.

1 ■ ▸▸ ***Tools*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Text Reader*** ▸▸ ■

2 ***New*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ **Select a scan mode** ▸▸ ■



Text Scanning Window

3 [Multi-selector] **to select a scan item icon** ▸▸ **Frame text in the recognition frame**

■To Adjust Zoom

▸▸ [Side key up] (Zoom in)/[Side key down] (Zoom out)

4 ■

The text is scanned.

The recognized text appears.

■To Rescan the Same Text

▸▸ [クリア] ▸▸ ***YES*** ▸▸ ■

■When Scanned Text Overflows Recognized Text Field

▸▸ [Multi-selector] to scroll the field

■To Save Scanned Text without Correcting It

▸▸ [Mail]

■To Scan Following Text

▸▸ ■ ▸▸ Frame text in the recognition frame (include several scanned characters of the preceding text) ▸▸ ■ (twice)

■To Scan Another Item

▸▸ ■ ▸▸ [Multi-selector] to select a scan item icon ▸▸ Frame text in the recognition frame ▸▸ ■ (twice)

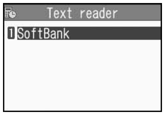
5 [Camera] ▸▸ ***Store*** ▸▸ ■

Tip

- Text must be accurately focused and be enlarged to fill the recognition frame.
- When *Processing* ⋯ appears, do not move handset.
- Handwritten text cannot be recognized.
- Text may not be recognized correctly when:
  - Faxed or copied text is scanned.
  - Decorated characters are scanned.
  - Spaces between characters are uneven.
  - Text is indistinguishable from the background.
  - Ambient lighting is inappropriate.

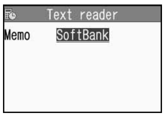
Checking Scanned Text

1 ■ ▶▶ ***Tools*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Text Reader*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Reading data list*** ▶▶ ■



Scanned Text List Window

2 **Select an entry** ▶▶ ■



Scanned Text Details Window

More Features

Advanced

Scanning Text

- Scan Text during Text Entry
- Correct Scanned Text
- Edit Scanned Text
- Set Scan Mode
- Set Guidance Off/On
- Set Vertical/Lateral Scan

(☛ **P. 10-24**)

Using Scanned Data

- Make a Call
- Compose a Message
- Access the Internet
- Save to Phone Book
- Save a Bookmark
- Search Phone Book
- Save a Text Memo
- Copy Text
- Delete Scanned Data

(☛ **P. 10-25**)

Osaifu-Keitai®

Start Here

【Lifestyle-Appli List】window .... P. 10-3
【Call Remote Lock Setting】window .... P. 10-4

Check Lifestyle-Appli Properties

【Lifestyle-Appli List】window ▶▶ Select a Lifestyle-Appli ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Properties*** ▶▶ [■]

Check Memory Status

【Lifestyle-Appli List】window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Memory info*** ▶▶ [■]

Delete a Lifestyle-Appli

【Lifestyle-Appli List】window ▶▶ Select a Lifestyle-Appli ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Delete*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

Edit Call Remote Lock Numbers

【Call Remote Lock Setting】window ▶▶ Select phone number ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter phone number ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

Delete Call Remote Lock Numbers

【Call Remote Lock Setting】window ▶▶ Select phone number ▶▶ [📷]

- To Select *Delete this*
  ▶▶ *Delete this* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]
- To Select *Delete all*
  ▶▶ *Delete all* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]

Schedule

Start Here

【Schedule】window .... P. 10-6
【Event Edit】window .... P. 10-6
【Event List】window .... P. 10-7
【Event Details】window .... P. 10-8

Sort Events by Icon

【Schedule】window/【Event List】window/【Event Details】window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Icon display*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select an icon ▶▶ [■]

Save User Icons

【Schedule】window/【Event List】window/【Event Details】window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***User icon setting*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select an image ▶▶ [■]

Saved user icons can be used when saving events to Schedule.

Delete User Icons

【Schedule】window/【Event List】window/【Event Details】window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***User icon setting*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Release this*** ▶▶ [■] (▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■])

To delete all user icons, select ***Release all*** and press [■].

Check Number of Saved Events

【Schedule】window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***No. of schedules*** ▶▶ [■]

Edit an Event

【Event List】window/【Event Details】window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Edit*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Edit each item ▶▶ [mail]

Copy an Event

【Event List】window/【Event Details】window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Copy*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Edit each item ▶▶ [mail]

Repetition setting of an event is canceled when it is copied.

Secret Event

First, set Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode on (P. 4-6).

- To Create Secret Event

【Event Edit】window ▶▶ Enter each item ▶▶ [mail]

- To Cancel Secret Setting

【Event List】window/【Event Details】window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Release secret*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

Delete All Events

【Schedule】window/【Event List】window/【Event Details】window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Delete*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Delete all*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

Reset Holidays

【Schedule】window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Reset holiday*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

To Do List

Start Here

【Task List】window.................. P. 10-10
【Task Details】window............ P. 10-10

Sort Tasks by Category

【Task List】window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Category display*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a category ▶▶ [■]

Change Order of Tasks

【Task List】window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Sort/ Filter*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a criterion ▶▶ [■]

Set Task Status

【Task List】window/【Task Details】window (▶▶ Select a task) ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Change status*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a status ▶▶ [■]

- The set status is indicated by the status icon in Task List window and in Task Details window.
- When *Completion* is set as status, enter the completion date.

Enter a Task Completion Date

【Task List】window ▶▶ Select a task ▶▶ [mail] ▶▶ [C] ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Enter date*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter year, month and date ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [mail]

- To enter a completion date from Calendar, select *Choose date*, press [■] and then select a date.
- You cannot enter a completion date unless the task status is set to *Completion*.

Delete All Tasks

【Task List】window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Delete*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Delete all*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

Text Memo

Start Here

【Text Memo List】window ...... P. 10-11

Save a Text Memo to Schedule

【Text Memo List】window ▶▶ Select a text memo ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Edit schedule*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter each item ▶▶ [mail]

- Event Edit window opens with the text memo set as event content.

Sort Text Memos by Category

【Text Memo List】window ▶▶ Select a text memo ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Category*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a category ▶▶ [■]

Check Text Memo Information

【Text Memo List】window ▶▶ Select a text memo ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Text memo info*** ▶▶ [■]

Delete All Text Memos

【Text Memo List】 window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Delete*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Delete all*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

Alarm

Start Here

Cancel All Alarms

【Alarm List】 window/ 【Alarm Details】 window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Release all*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

Edit Alarm Settings

【Alarm List】 window ▶▶ Select an alarm ▶▶ [mail] ▶▶ Edit each item ▶▶ [mail]

Bar Code Reader & Text Reader

Start Here

Scanning Bar Codes/Text

Scan Bar Code/Text during Text Entry

【Text Entry】 window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Quote data*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Bar code reader*** or ***Text reader*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Scan a bar code/text

Correct Scanned Text

【Text Scanning】 window ▶▶ Scan text ▶▶ [navigation key] to move cursor to the character you want to correct ▶▶ Press the number key corresponding to the correct character on the suggestion list

Press [*] to toggle between upper case and lower case.

Edit Scanned Text

【Text Scanning】 window ▶▶ Scan text ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Edit*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Edit text using keypad

To cancel editing and return to scanned text, press [camera], select *Select recog. data* and then press [■].

Set Scan Mode

【Text Scanning】 window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***NEGA/POSI mode*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Auto setting***, ***Positive fix*** or ***Negative fix*** ▶▶ [■]

Select *Positive fix* to scan dark-colored text on light-colored background.

Select *Negative fix* to scan light-colored text on dark-colored background.

Set Guidance Off/On

【Text Scanning】 window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Guidance OFF*** or ***Guidance ON*** ▶▶ [■]

Set Vertical/Lateral Scan

【Text Scanning】 window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Vertical writing*** or ***Lateral writing*** ▶▶ [■]

Using Scanned Data

Make a Call

【Scanned Bar Code Data Details】 window/ 【Scanned Text Details】 window ▶▶ Select a phone number ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Dialing*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Voice phone*** or ***Video Call*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Dial*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Talk ▶▶ [end] to end call

Compose a Message

【Scanned Bar Code Data Details】 window/ 【Scanned Text Details】 window ▶▶ Select an e-mail address ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Create S! mail*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Compose and send S! Mail

Access the Internet

【Scanned Bar Code Data Details】 window/ 【Scanned Text Details】 window ▶▶ Select a URL ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Internet*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

Save to Phone Book

【Scanned Bar Code Data Details】 window/ 【Scanned Text Details】 window ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Add to phonebook*** ▶▶ [■]

- To Select *Phone*
  ▶▶ *Phone* ▶▶ *New* or *Add* ▶▶ [■] (▶▶ Search Phone Book ▶▶ Select an entry ▶▶ [■] (twice)) ▶▶ Edit each item ▶▶ [mail] (▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■])
- To Select *USIM*
  ▶▶ *USIM* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *New* or *Overwrite* ▶▶ [■] (▶▶ Search Phone Book ▶▶ Select an entry ▶▶ [■] (twice)) ▶▶ Edit each item ▶▶ [mail] (▶▶ *Overwrite** or *Add* ▶▶ [■])

* To select *Overwrite*, press [■], select *YES*, then press [■].

Save a Bookmark

【Scanned Bar Code Data Details】 window/ 【Scanned Text Details】 window ▶▶ Select a URL ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Add bookmark*** ▶▶ [■] (twice) ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ [■]

Search Phone Book

【Scanned Text Details】 window ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Search phonebook*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Search Phone Book

Save a Text Memo

【Scanned Text Details】 window ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Add to memo*** ▶▶ ■

Copy Text

【Scanned Bar Code Data Details】 window/ 【Scanned Text Details】 window ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Copy*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select beginning of characters ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select end of characters ▶▶ ■

Edit Title of Scanned Data

【Scanned Bar Code Data List】 window ▶▶ Select an entry ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Edit title*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Edit title ▶▶ ■

Delete Scanned Data

【Scanned Bar Code Data List】 window/ 【Scanned Text List】 window ▶▶ Select an entry ▶▶ 📷

- To Select *Delete this*
  ▶▶ *Delete this* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■
- To Select *Delete all*
  ▶▶ *Delete all* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■

Data Management

11

About Data Folder

Use Data Folder to manage data on handset. New data created by handset functions or obtained via the Internet or mail are saved to different folders according to the file format.

- Some folders contain links. Use the links to access download sites in Yahoo! Keitai.

Folders & Files in Data Folder

My Picture
Image files such as those taken by camera and downloaded My Pictograms

Melody
Melodies and audio files recorded by Voice Announce

S! Appli
Downloaded S! Appli and Lifestyle-Appli

Ring Songs・Music
Chaku-Uta®, Chaku-Uta Full® and downloaded music files

Videos
Video files such as those recorded by camera

TV
Recorded programs*1 and still images captured from programs*2

Illumi
Illumi files

*1 Can be saved on memory card only.
*2 Can be saved on handset only.

When Data Folder memory is full or number of files savable is reached, a message asks whether to delete unnecessary data (note, however, this message may not appear depending on the data type). Follow the steps below to delete data:

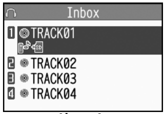
YES ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a data item ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [✉] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]

* You may need to select a data type before selecting a folder if the data you want to delete has multiple storage areas.
* You may need to select more than one data item to delete depending on the degree of insufficient memory.

Opening Files

1 [■] ▶▶ ***Data Folder*** ▶▶ [■]

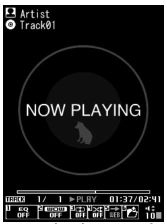
2 **Select a folder and a sub folder** ▶▶ [■]



File List

■To Open a File on Memory Card
▶▶ ***microSD*** ▶▶ [■]

3 **Select a file** ▶▶ [■]



Opened File Window

Using Picture Files

Open a file from My Picture folder.


Picture File

Operations Available in Picture Files

Switch Files	[◀▶]
Toggle Normal Screen/Full Screen	[Y!]
Zoom In/Zoom Out*	[■] ▶▶ [Y!]/[✉]
Show at Actual Size*	[■] ▶▶ [📷]
Scroll Large-sized or Zoomed-in Image*	[✥]

* Press [■] to return to the original size.

Using Melody Files

Open a file from Melody folder.



Melody File

Operations Available in Melody Files

Switch Files	[◀▶]
Adjust Volume	[▲▼] or [▲]/[▼]
Stop	[■]
End	[クリア]

Using Illumi File

Open Illumi files saved to Illumi folder and animation plays on Illumination Panel for approximately 15 seconds. Following operations are available during Illumi file playback.

Stop/Play	■
Set as Illumination Panel (Only available while playing)	✉

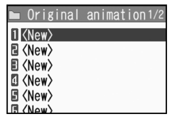
Tip

- Selecting a file in S! Appli folder activates S! Appli. For details on S! Appli, see P. 9-6.
- Selecting a file in Ring Songs · Music folder or Videos folder activates Music Player. For details on Music Player, see P. 9-3.

Creating Animations

Create animations each of which is made of up to 20 frames using still images in My Picture folder.

1 ■ ▶▶ ***Data Folder*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***My Picture*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Original animation*** ▶▶ ■



Original Animation List Window

2 ***<New>*** ▶▶ ■

3 **Select a frame** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Select a folder** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Select a still image** ▶▶ ■

Repeat this step to assign a series of images to their respective frames.

■To Cancel an Assigned Image

▶▶ Select a frame ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Release this*** ▶▶ ■

4 ✉

Note

- Only images in JPEG format can be used for creating animations.
- Some images may be unavailable depending on the image size or file size.
- Images saved on external memory devices (i.e. memory card) cannot be used.

Tip

- Select an animation you created in Original Animation List window and press ■ to play the animation.

Using Playlists (Melodies)

Save melodies to Playlist to play back in the saved order.

1 ■ ▶▶ ***Data Folder*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Melody*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Playlist*** ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Edit playlist*** ▶▶ ■

■To Clear Playlist

▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Release playlist*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

2 **Select a number** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Select a folder** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Select a melody** ▶▶ ■

Repeat this step to assign other melodies to different numbers.

■To Cancel an Assigned Melody

▶▶ Select a melody ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Release this*** ▶▶ ■

3 ✉

Tip

- Select Playlist folder in Melody and press ■ to play Playlist.
- Changing file names of melodies on Playlist, or deleting melody files clears Playlist.

Using Playlists (Videos)

Save videos to a playlist to play them in the playlist order.

1 ■ ▶▶ ***Data Folder*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Videos*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Playlist*** ▶▶ ■



Playlist List Window

2 **Select a playlist** ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Edit playlist*** ▶▶ ■

3 **Select a number** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Select a folder** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Select a video** ▶▶ ■

Repeat this step to assign other videos to different numbers.

■To Cancel an Assigned Video

▶▶ Select a number ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Release this*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

4 ✉

Tip

- Select a playlist in Playlist List window and press ■ to play the playlist.

More Features

Advanced

Opening Files

- Check File Information
- Change File Order
- Set Wallpaper
- Set a Video to Appear in Standby
- Set a Melody/Video as Ringtone

(☛ P. 11-14)

Viewing Images

- Play Animation
- Tile Four Images
- Set Display Size of an Image
- Edit Title of an Original Animation
- Cancel an Original Animation

(☛ P. 11-14)

Playing Melodies

- Play All Melodies in the Same Folder Repeatedly

(☛ P. 11-15)

Playing Videos

- Switch Display Format of File List Window
- Clear a Playlist

(☛ P. 11-15)

Customize

Display Settings

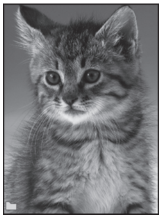
- Set Image List View

(☛ P. 13-4)

Editing Still Images

Basic Flow of Operations

1 [■] » ***Data Folder*** » [■] » ***My Picture*** » [■] » Select a folder » [■] » Select an image » [■]



My Picture Window

2 [camera] » ***Edit image*** » [■] » Select an editing option » [■] » Edit image

3 [■] to end editing

4 [■] » ***YES*** or ***NO*** » [■]

Selecting *YES* overwrites the original image. Selecting *NO* saves the edited image as a new file in the same folder.

Note

- Only images with [icon] can be edited.
- Repeated editing may cause deterioration of image quality or increased file size.

Adding a Frame

1 [My Picture] window » [camera] » ***Edit image*** » [■] » ***Frame*** » [■]

2 Select a frame » [■]

■**To Change Frame**

» [nav]

■**To Rotate Frame 180 Degrees**

» [mail]

■**To Cancel Frame**

» [camera] » *Cancel* » [■]

3 [■]

4 [■] » ***YES*** or ***NO*** » [■]

Adding Stamps

1 [My Picture] window » [camera] » ***Edit image*** » [■] » ***Marker stamp*** » [■]

2 Select a marker stamp » [■]

■**To Rotate Marker Stamp**

» [camera] » *90° to right*, *90° to left* or *180°* » [■]

■**To Enlarge/Reduce Marker Stamp**

» [camera] » *Scale up* or *Scale down* » [■]

■**To Cancel Marker Stamp**

» [mail]

3 [nav] to select a position » [■]

■**To Paste Another Marker Stamp**

» [mail] » Select a marker stamp » [■]

4 [■]

5 [■] » ***YES*** or ***NO*** » [■]

Pasting a Text Stamp

1 [My Picture] window ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Edit image*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Character stamp*** ▶▶ ■

2 Enter text ▶▶ ■

■To Edit Text
▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Character input*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter text ▶▶ ■

■To Change Text Color
▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Character color*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a color ▶▶ ■
Press ✉ to toggle color palettes.

■To Change Font Type
▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Font type*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Gothic*** or ***Ming-cho*** ▶▶ ■

■To Change Font Size
▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Font size*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a font size ▶▶ ■

3 ✥ to select a position ▶▶ ■

4 ■

5 ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ▶▶ ■

Cropping an Image

1 [My Picture] window ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Edit image*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Trim away*** ▶▶ ■

2 Select a size ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ✥ to position cropping area ▶▶ ■

3 ■

4 ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ▶▶ ■

Editing Videos

Clip the desired scenes from saved videos.

1 ■ ▶▶ ***Data Folder*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Videos*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a video ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Edit Video*** ▶▶ ■

2 📷 ▶▶ ***Trim Videos*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Any size*** or ***500KB*** ▶▶ ■

3 ✉
The video playback and clipping start at the same time.

■To Start from a Halfway Point
▶▶ ■ ▶▶ At a desired point ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ✉

4 ■ to stop ▶▶ ✉
Selected portion plays.
When ***500KB*** is selected, clipping stops automatically when the size of clipped video reaches 500 KB.

5 ■ (twice) ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

Note

- Only QCIF (176 × 144) or smaller videos with ✂ can be clipped.
- Editing may cause deterioration of image quality.

More Features

Advanced

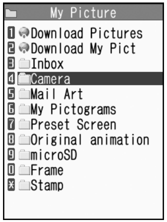
Editing files
- Retouch an Image
- Adjust Image Brightness
- Rotate an Image
- Change Image Size
- Correct Backlight
- Refresh Skin Tone

(☞ P. 11-15)

Creating a Folder

1 ■ ▶▶ ***Data Folder*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Select a folder type** ▶▶ ■

<Example> When My Picture is Selected



Folder List Window

2 📷 ▶▶ ***Add folder*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Enter folder name** ▶▶ ■

Tip

- Folders can only be created in handset Data Folder.

Moving Files to a Different Folder

1 **[File List] window** ▶▶ **Select a file** ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Move*** ▶▶ ■

2 ***Move this*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Select a destination folder** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

■To Move Multiple Files

▶▶ ***Move selected*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a destination folder ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a file ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Repeat the same step to specify other files ▶▶ ✉ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

■To Move All Files in a Folder

▶▶ ***Move all*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a destination folder ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

More Features

Advanced

Managing Folders

- Edit a Folder Name
- Delete a Folder
- Delete All Files in My Picture/Melody/ Videos Folder

(☛ P. 11-16)

Managing Files

- Edit a Title in My Picture File List Window
- Check Volume of Saved Files
- Edit a File Name
- Delete Files

(☛ P. 11-16)

Save files to memory cards. Still images and videos shot with handset camera can be saved directly to memory card. Data can be copied and moved between handset and memory card. Data on memory card can also be accessed from Data Folder.

- Handset supports memory cards of up to 2 GB.
- Do not insert or remove memory cards when handset power is on.
- Insert memory cards properly. Otherwise, they cannot be used on handset.
- Do not affix stickers or labels to memory cards. As memory cards are very thin and precise mechanisms, even a thin sticker or label on a memory card may cause contact failure or destruction of data.
- Keep memory cards out of reach of infants who may accidentally swallow them or be injured.
- Use only memory cards recommended by SoftBank. Other memory cards may not work properly and cannot be used on handset.
- Do not remove a memory card or power off handset while writing/reading data on/to that memory card. It may cause data loss or malfunction.
- Access to memory cards may be unavailable when the battery level is low.

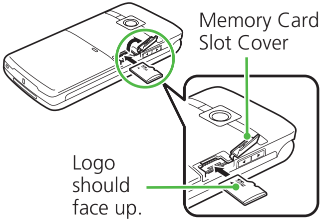
Inserting & Removing a Memory Card

Power off handset before inserting/ removing a memory card.

Insertion

1 Insert memory card gently with the printed logo facing up

Push the card forward until it is locked in place.



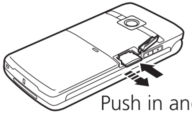
Tip

- If [icon] appears in Display, there may be a contact failure. Remove and reinsert memory card.

Removal

1 Push memory card in completely and release it

Memory card is ejected.



Note

- Be careful not to force Memory Card into or out of handset. Memory Card may be damaged.

Formatting a Memory Card

- Format memory cards on handset only. Memory cards formatted on another device or PC may not work.
- Formatting a memory card deletes all the data on it.

1 ■ » ***Tools*** » ■ » ***microSD Manager*** » ■

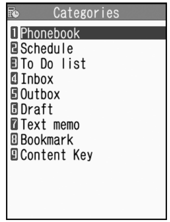
2 📷 » ***microSD format*** » ■ » **Enter Security code** » ■ » ***YES*** » ■

Note

- Do not remove memory card while formatting. Handset/memory card malfunction may occur.
- Make sure that there is no important data left on the memory card before formatting it.

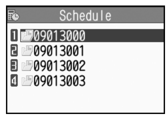
Accessing Memory Card Data

1 ■ » ***Tools*** » ■ » ***microSD Manager*** » ■



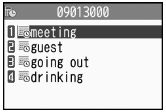
Category List Window

2 **Select a category** » ■



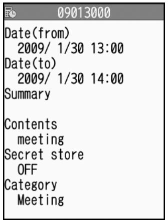
File List Window

3 **Select a file** » ■



Data List Window

4 **Select a data item** » ■



Data Details Window

Data Management

11

Copying Data between Handset & Memory Card

Following items can be copied to/from handset and memory card:

PIM Data	Phone Book entries, Schedule, To Do List, text memos, Inbox, Outbox, Draft, bookmarks, content keys
Files in Data Folder	Still images, My Pictograms, Flash®, melodies, videos, songs

Copying Handset Data to Memory Card

Copy handset data (Phone Book entries, Schedule, messages, images, videos, etc.) to memory card.

<Example> Copy data in Data Folder to memory card

1 [Data List] window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Copy to microSD*** ▶▶ [■]

2 ***Copy this*** ▶▶ [■]

■**To Copy Multiple Data**

▶▶ ***Copy selected*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a data item ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Repeat the same step to specify other data ▶▶ [mail] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

■**To Copy All Data**

▶▶ ***Copy all*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

Tip

- When a Phone Book entry or a Schedule event that are set as secret are copied to memory card, their secret settings are canceled.
- Content keys are copied collectively at one time.
- Files attached to messages may be deleted.
- You need to select a destination folder when copying data in Data Folder.
- Data saved in Pre-installed/Preset Screen folders of Data Folder cannot be copied.

Copying Memory Card Data to Handset

◎To Copy Images or Other Data to Handset

1 [■] ▶▶ ***Data Folder*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a folder type ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***microSD*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a data item ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Copy to phone*** ▶▶ [■]

2 ***Copy this*** ▶▶ [■]

■**To Copy Multiple Data**

▶▶ ***Copy selected*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a data item ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Repeat the same step to specify other data ▶▶ [mail] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

■**To Copy All Data**

▶▶ ***Copy all*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

◎To Copy PIM Data to Handset

<Example> Copy Data in Overwrite Mode

1 ■ ▶▶ ***Tools*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***microSD Manager*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Select a PIM data type** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Select a data item** ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Copy & overwrite*** ▶▶ ■

2 ***Copy & OW this*** ▶▶ ■

■To Copy Multiple Files

▶▶ ***Copy & OW select*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a file ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Repeat the same step to specify other files ▶▶ ✉

■To Copy All Files

▶▶ ***Copy & OW all*** ▶▶ ■

3 **Enter Security code** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

Note

- When copying memory card data to handset in overwrite mode, the corresponding data on handset is overwritten by the copied data.

Configuring Print Settings of Images

Specify which images on memory card to be printed and the number of prints, etc. in DPOF (Digital Print Order Format) settings so that the images can be printed by DPOF compatible printers or print service shops according to the specified print settings.

1 ■ ▶▶ ***Data Folder*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***My Picture*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***microSD*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***DCIM*** ▶▶ ■

2 **Select a folder** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Select a still image** ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***DPOF setting*** ▶▶ ■

3 ***DPOF set One*** ▶▶ ■

■To Specify Multiple Images

▶▶ ***DPOF set Choice*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a still image ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Repeat the same step to specify other images ▶▶ ✉

4 ***Print*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Print Sheets*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ **Enter number of prints** ▶▶ ■

5 ***a date*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ▶▶ ■

6 ✉

More Features

Advanced

Memory Card

- Check Available Memory Space of Memory Card
- Check & Repair Memory Card
- Delete Data on Memory Card
- Cancel Print Settings of Images

(☛ P. 11-17)

Using Files

Start Here

Opening Files

Check File Information

【File List】window/【Opened File】window (▶▶ Select a file) ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Image info***, ***Music info***, ***Video info***, ***Melody info*** or ***Illumi info*** ▶▶ [■]

Change File Order

【File List】window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Sort*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a criterion ▶▶ [■]

Set Wallpaper

【File List】window/【My Picture】window (▶▶ Select a file) ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Set as display*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Stand-by display*** ▶▶ [■] (▶▶ Select a layout ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Confirm preview ▶▶ [■])

- You can also set images to appear when making calls or sending messages.

Set a Video to Appear in Standby

【File List】window ▶▶ Select a file ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Stand-by display*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

Set a Melody/Video as Ringtone

【File List】window/【Opened File】window (▶▶ Select a file) ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Ring tone*** or ***Select ring tone*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ [■]

Viewing Images

Play Animation

【My Picture】window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Retry*** ▶▶ [■]

Tile Four Images

【File List】window ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Composite image*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a position ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select an image ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Repeat the same step to assign three other images to their respective positions ▶▶ [✉] ▶▶ [■]

- Only images in JPEG format can be used for creating composite images.
- Copyright-protected images are unavailable.
- Images saved on memory card cannot be used.

Set Display Size of an Image

【My Picture】 window » [📷] » ***Set image disp.*** » [■] » ***Normal*** or ***Fit in display*** » [■]

Edit Title of an Original Animation

【Original Animation List】 window » Select an animation » [📷] » ***Edit title*** » [■] » Edit title » [■]

Cancel an Original Animation

【Original Animation List】 window » Select an animation » [📷] » ***Release animation*** » [■] » ***YES*** » [■]

Playing Melodies

Play All Melodies in the Same Folder Repeatedly

【Melody】 window » [📷] » ***Set repeat play*** » [■] » ***ON*** » [■]

Playing Videos

Switch Display Format of File List Window

【File List】 window » [📷] » ***List setting*** » [■] » ***Title*** or ***Title + image*** » [■]

Clear a Playlist

【Playlist List】 window » Select a playlist » [📷] » ***Release playlist*** » [■] » ***YES*** » [■]

Editing Files

Start Here

【My Picture】 window................ P. 11-7

Retouch an Image

【My Picture】 window » [📷] » ***Edit image*** » [■] » ***Retouch*** » [■] » Select an effect » [■] (three times) » ***YES*** or ***NO*** » [■]

Adjust Image Brightness

【My Picture】 window » [📷] » ***Edit image*** » [■] » ***Brightness*** » [■] » [◐] to adjust brightness » [■] (twice) » ***YES*** or ***NO*** » [■]

Rotate an Image

【My Picture】 window » [📷] » ***Edit image*** » [■] » ***Rotate*** » [■] » ***90° to right***, ***90° to left*** or ***180°*** » [■] (three times) » ***YES*** or ***NO*** » [■]

Change Image Size

【My Picture】 window » [📷] » ***Edit image*** » [■] » ***Change size*** » [■] » Select a size » [■] (three times) » ***YES*** or ***NO*** » [■]

Correct Backlight

【My Picture】window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Edit image*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Correct backlight*** ▶▶ [■] (three times) ▶▶ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ▶▶ [■]

Refresh Skin Tone

【My Picture】window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Edit image*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Refresh skin tone*** ▶▶ [■] (three times) ▶▶ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ▶▶ [■]

Managing Folders

Start Here

【Folder List】window .... P. 11-9

Edit a Folder Name

【Folder List】window ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Edit folder name*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Edit folder name ▶▶ [■]

- Only names of user-created folders can be edited.

Delete a Folder

【Folder List】window ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Delete folder*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

- Only user-created folders can be deleted.
- Files in the selected folder are also deleted.
- When files that are set as wallpaper, ringtone, alarm tone, etc. are deleted, their settings are reset to default.

Delete All Files in My Picture/ Melody/Videos Folder

【Folder List】window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Delete all image*** or ***Delete all*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

- When files that are set as wallpaper, ringtone, alarm tone, etc. are deleted, their settings are reset to default.

Managing Files

Start Here

【File List】window .... P. 11-3

Edit a Title in My Picture File List Window

【File List】window ▶▶ Select an image file ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Edit title*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Edit title ▶▶ [■]

- Titles of files saved in Pre-installed/ Preset Screen folders cannot be edited.

Check Volume of Saved Files

【File List】window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Memory info*** ▶▶ [■]

Edit a File Name

【File List】window ▶▶ Select a file ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Edit file name*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Edit file name ▶▶ [■]

- Names of files saved in Pre-installed/ Preset Screen folders cannot be edited.

Delete Files

【File List】window ▶▶ Select a file ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ *Delete* ▶▶ [■]

- To Select *Delete this*
  ▶▶ *Delete this* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]
- To Select *Delete selected*
  ▶▶ *Delete selected* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select files ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [mail] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]
- To Select *Delete all*
  ▶▶ *Delete all* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]

Memory Card

Start Here

Check Available Memory Space of Memory Card

【Category List】window/【File List】window/【Data List】window/【Data Details】window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***microSD info*** ▶▶ [■]

Check & Repair Memory Card

【Category List】window ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Check microSD*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

- To cancel checking and repairing a memory card, press [mail] or [end].
- Some memory cards may not be repairable.

Delete Data on Memory Card

【File List】window ▶▶ Select a data item ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ *Delete* ▶▶ [■]

- To Select *Delete this*
  ▶▶ *Delete this* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]
- To Select *Delete selected*
  ▶▶ *Delete selected* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select data ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [mail] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]
- To Select *Delete all*
  ▶▶ *Delete all* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]

Cancel Print Settings of Images

[■] ▶▶ ***Data Folder*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***My Picture*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***microSD*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***DCIM*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a still image ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***DPOF setting*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***DPOF set One*** or ***DPOF set Choice*** ▶▶ [■] (▶▶ Select images ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [mail]) ▶▶ ***Print OFF*** or ***All print OFF*** ▶▶ [■]

Connectivity

12

Getting Started

Wirelessly exchange files with infrared compatible devices.
The following data can be transferred via infrared:

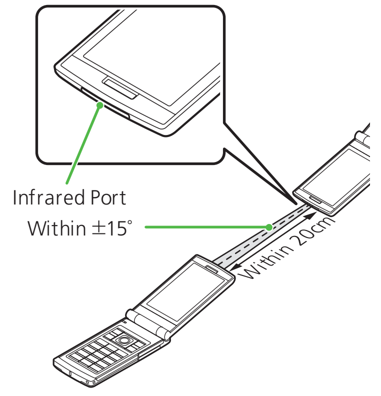
- Still images
- Melodies
- Videos
- My Pictograms
- Songs
- Phone Book entries, Account Details
- Schedule events
- To Do List tasks
- Received messages, sent messages
- Draft messages
- Text memos
- Common Phrases (Templates)
- Own Dictionary data
- Bookmarks (Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser)

Note

- Handset cannot send all still images, melodies, videos, My Pictograms or songs at one time.

Precautions

- Data may not be sent depending on the status of the receiving device. Folder settings of received messages or bookmarks, etc., or contents of Graphic Mails may be lost or incorrectly transferred depending on the receiving handset model.
- Handset is out of range during infrared transmission, so such functions as voice and video calls, the Internet access and sending/receiving S! Mails are unavailable. This may continue even after infrared transmission is finished.
- Transferring data may take a while depending on the amount of data. Some data may not be received by handset.
- During transmission, progress bar shows approximate number of files transferred. Note that actual progress may be faster.
- Some pictographs and symbols in messages and Phone Book entries may not be received by handset correctly.
- When receiving still images by ***Send all Ir data***, all still images on handset (including Phone Book entry images) are deleted.
- Align Infrared Ports of both sending and receiving devices, as shown below.



- Do not move either device until a message appears indicating completion of data transmission. Do not place any objects between the devices. Do not obstruct Infrared Ports.
- Infrared transmission may be disrupted by direct sunlight, directly under fluorescent lighting or near other infrared devices.

Authentication Password

To transfer multiple files at once, the same authentication password must be entered on both sending and receiving devices.

Transferring Data via Infrared

Sending One File

Send one file at a time from a data list window/data details window.

1 In a data list window, select a file or open a data details window ▶▶ [Camera] ▶▶ ***Send Ir data*** ▶▶ [■]

■To Send a JPEG Image
In a data list window ▶▶ [Mail]
This enables faster transmission.

2 ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]
Transfer starts.
When the file is sent, a message appears indicating completion of transfer.

■To Cancel Transfer
▶▶ [Mail]

Tip

- In the case of high-speed transmission of JPEG images, the receiving device may fail to receive images, even when the image transmission is successfully completed by the sending device.

Receiving One File

1 [■] ▶▶ ***Tools*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Receive Ir Data*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Receive*** ▶▶ [■]
Transfer starts.

■To Cancel Transfer
▶▶ [Mail]

2 When file is received ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]
File is saved to handset.
File is discarded if no operation is done in about 30 seconds of transfer.

Sending All Files

Send all files at one time from a data list window/data details window.

1 In a data list window/data details window ▶▶ [Camera] ▶▶ ***Send all Ir data*** ▶▶ [■]

2 Enter Security code ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter authentication password

3 ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]
Transfer starts.
When all files are sent, a message appears indicating completion of transfer.

■To Cancel Transfer
▶▶ [Mail]

Receiving All Files

1 [■] ▶▶ ***Tools*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Receive Ir Data*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Receive all*** ▶▶ [■]

2 Enter Security code ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter authentication password

3 ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

4 When an overwrite confirmation window appears ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■

Transfer starts.
When files are saved to handset, a message appears indicating completion of transfer.

■To Cancel Transfer

▶▶ ✉

Note

- When handset receives all files, the corresponding files on handset are overwritten. For example, when handset receives all messages, all the messages on handset including protected ones are overwritten; and when it receives all Phone Book data or Schedule data, all the Phone Book entries or events, including those set as secret, are overwritten.

More Features

Customize

Phone Book

❖ Do Not Send Phone Book Entry Images via Infrared

(☛ P. 13-16)

Connect handset to a PC with a USB cable to use the following functions.

- USB cable is sold separately as an optional accessory.

Function	Description
Data transfer*	Transfer Phone Book, Schedule and To Do List data between handset and a PC (P. 12-6).
USB memory	Use memory card inserted in handset as an external drive of a PC to read/write data on/to memory card (P. 12-6).

* Install the USB driver on the supplied Utility Software (CD-ROM) on your PC in advance.

Utility Software CD-ROM (Japanese)

Included Software

- USB Driver
- Data Transfer Tools for 830CA (P. 12-6)

PC Operating Environments

Item	Requirement
PC	PC/AT compatible PC with at least one available USB port
Operating System	Japanese version of Windows® 2000, XP, or Vista
Memory	More than the environment recommended for your OS
Hard Disk	More than 30 MB of free space* * Varies depending on the PC.
Others	Display: 800 × 600 pixels or more, and High Color or higher color specifications recommended

Tip

- When connecting handset to a PC or PDA to use the Internet, it is common for large-volume packet transmission to occur even in short periods of time, and may incur expensive transmission fees. Be sure to check your transmission fees when using the Internet.

Installing USB Driver on a PC

Install the USB driver on your PC before connecting handset to your PC. You must log on to Windows as a user with administrator privileges to install the USB driver.

1. **Insert the Utility Software CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive of your PC**
2. **Connect handset to the PC using a USB cable**

3 **Install the USB driver following onscreen instructions**

* Although an error message appears, continue installation.

Tip

- To uninstall the USB driver, select *830ca_un.exe* on the Utility Software CD-ROM.

Data Transfer

About Data Transfer Tools

Use this software to back up Phone Book, Schedule and To Do List data on handset to your PC and to restore the data to handset after editing it on your PC.
For information about how to install the software, see the manual on the Utility Software CD-ROM.

Setting USB Mode

Set USB mode before connecting handset to your PC via USB cable.
To use Data Transfer Tools or to use handset as a modem for packet transmission, set USB mode to ***Communication mode***.
To manipulate memory card data from a PC, set it to ***microSD mode***.

1 ■ ▸▸ ***Settings*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***External Connection*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***USB mode setting*** ▸▸ ■

2 ***Communication mode*** **or** ***microSD mode*** ▸▸ ■

Manipulating Memory Card Data from a PC

Connect handset to your PC using a USB cable, and manipulate memory card data from the PC.

● Set *USB mode setting* to *microSD mode* in advance.

1 **Connect handset to your PC using a USB cable**

This enables memory card data to be manipulated from your PC.

2 **When you are finished, disconnect handset from the PC**

Follow the procedure for safely removing external devices (which differs slightly according to the operating system), when disconnecting handset from the PC.

Note

- Make sure handset and the PC are properly connected. Otherwise, data cannot be transferred, and may even be lost.
- If handset's battery is almost or completely empty, data cannot be transferred, and may even be lost. Check handset's battery level and the power of your PC.
- Do not remove the USB cable while copying data from your PC to handset. If the USB cable is removed during data transfer, data cannot be transferred, and may even be lost.

Using Handset as Modem

Use handset as an external modem for packet transmission.

- Refer to the instructions of your Internet service provider or the manual of your PC for the network connection settings on your PC.
- To use “Access Internet” for data communication, you do not have to sign up with a service provider. For information about the service overview, access points and setting procedures, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-48).

Customization

13

Clock

Start Here ■ ▸▸ ***Settings*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Clock*** ▸▸ ■

12-hour or 24-hour Clock	▸▸ ***Clock display*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Style*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***12h clock*** or ***24h clock*** ▸▸ ■
Clock Size	▸▸ ***Clock display*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Size*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ Select a size ▸▸ ■
Clock Color	▸▸ ***Clock display*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Color*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Black*** or ***White*** ▸▸ ■
Set Auto Time Adjustment	▸▸ ***Set main time*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Auto time adjust*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Auto*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ Select a time zone ▸▸ ■ • Press ✉ to change city/area name shown in Time Zone Selection window.
Manually Adjust Time	▸▸ ***Set main time*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Auto time adjust*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Manual (Date time set)*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ Select a time zone ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ Enter date and time ▸▸ ■
Summer Time	▸▸ ***Set main time*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Summer time*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***ON*** ▸▸ ■
Time Zone (Sub Clock)	▸▸ ***Set sub clock*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***display method*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Always*** ▸▸ ■ (▸▸ ***YES*** ▸▸ ■) ▸▸ Select a time zone ▸▸ ■
Hide Sub Clock	▸▸ ***Set sub clock*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***display method*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***OFF*** ▸▸ ■
Summer Time (Sub Clock)	▸▸ ***Set sub clock*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Summer time*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***ON*** ▸▸ ■

Alarm

Start Here ■ ▸▸ ***Settings*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Clock*** ▸▸ ■

Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time	▸▸ ***Alarm setting*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Operation preferred*** or ***Alarm preferred*** ▸▸ ■
Change Alarm Tone	▸▸ ***Clock Alarm Tone set*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ Select an item ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ Set an alarm tone

Auto Power On/Off

Set Auto Power On/Off	■ ▸▸ ***Settings*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Clock*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Auto power ON*** or ***Auto power OFF*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***ON*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ Enter time ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***1 time*** or ***Daily*** ▸▸ ■

Kisekae Theme

Start Here ■ ▸▸ ***Settings*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Kisekae Theme*** ▸▸ ■

Set Interface Design Theme	▸▸ Select a theme ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***YES*** ▸▸ ■
Check Default Kisekae Themes	▸▸ Select a theme ▸▸ ✉ • Details of some items can be checked by selecting an item and pressing ✉.
Edit Title of a Theme	▸▸ Select a theme ▸▸ 📷 ▸▸ ***Edit title*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ Edit title ▸▸ ■

Save Current Kisekae Themes as Favorite	▶▶ *お気に入り* (Favorites) ▶▶ [✉] ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Take Setting info*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■] • The current kisekae themes can later be recalled collectively from お気に入り when they are changed.
Change Favorite Kisekae Themes by Each Item	▶▶ *お気に入り* (Favorites) ▶▶ [✉] ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Set a data
Clear All Favorite Settings	▶▶ *お気に入り* (Favorites) ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Reset Setting info*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

Display Settings

Start Here [■] ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Display*** ▶▶ [■]

Wallpaper	▶▶ ***Display setting*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Stand-by display*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***My Picture*** or ***Videos*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Set an image/video (▶▶ Select a layout ▶▶ [■] (twice))
Show Calendar in Standby	▶▶ ***Display setting*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Stand-by display*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Calendar*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Background*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Set an image ▶▶ Select a layout ▶▶ [■] (twice) • Select ***No background*** if you do not want any image in the background of the calendar. • Press [□], use [↕] to select the calendar and press [■] to operate it. Use [↕] to switch to the previous/next month. Press [■] to activate Schedule.
Set Random Display of Images in Standby	▶▶ ***Display setting*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Stand-by display*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Random display*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a layout ▶▶ [■] • Images switch at random each time handset is opened or returns to Standby.

Set a Wake-up Image	▶▶ ***Display setting*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Wake-up display*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***My Picture*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Set an image
Set a Wake-up Message	▶▶ ***Display setting*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Wake-up display*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Message*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter message ▶▶ ■
Set an Outgoing Call/Message Image	▶▶ ***Display setting*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Dialing***, ***Video Call Dialing*** or ***Mail sending*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Set an image
Set an Incoming Call/Video	▶▶ ***Display setting*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Calling*** or ***Video Call Calling*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Select calling disp.*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***My Picture*** or ***Videos*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Set an image/video
Set an Incoming Message Image	▶▶ ***Display setting*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Mail receiving*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Select receiving disp.*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Set an image
Set an Image for New Messages/ Received Results Window	▶▶ ***Display setting*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Retrieve New*** or ***Mail rec'd result*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Set an image
Display Color Scheme	▶▶ ***Display design*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Color pattern*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a pattern ▶▶ ■
Set a Battery Level Indicator/Signal Strength Indicator Pattern	▶▶ ***Display design*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Icon pattern*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Battery icon*** or ***Antenna icon*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a pattern ▶▶ ■
Change Softkey Color	▶▶ ***Display design*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Soft key*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a color ▶▶ ■
Set Font Type	▶▶ ***Font*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Font type*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Gothic*** or ***Ming-cho*** ▶▶ ■ • Alternatively, press and hold 7 in Standby to make font settings.
Set Font Weight	▶▶ ***Font*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Thickness*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Thin*** or ***Bold*** ▶▶ ■ • Alternatively, press and hold 7 in Standby to make font settings.

Set Font Sizes Collectively	▶▶ ***Font*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Character size*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Standard*** or ***X-large*** ▶▶ ■ • You can set settable items in ***Separate setting*** for ***Character size*** together at once. • Alternatively, press and hold 7 in Standby to make font settings.
Set Font Size for Each Function Window	▶▶ ***Font*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Character size*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Separate setting*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a window ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a size ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ✉ • Alternatively, press and hold 7 in Standby to make font settings. • From PC Site Browser, this setting is only enabled in Small screen layout.
Interface Language	▶▶ *言語選択* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *日本語* or ***English*** ▶▶ ■ • To change interface language from Japanese to English: ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *設定* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *ディスプレイ* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *Language* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *English* ▶▶ ■
Set Image List View	▶▶ ***Viewer settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Picture*** or ***Title*** ▶▶ ■
Guard from Prying Eyes	▶▶ ***Screen Filter*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** ▶▶ ■ • Alternatively, press and hold 8 to toggle Screen Filter on and off. • When ***Screen Filter*** is set, Display is whitish and the viewing angle is narrower.
Show Information of Messages Received When Watching TV	▶▶ ***Quick Info setting*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Display sender*** or ***Display sender/subject*** ▶▶ ■

Backlight

Start Here ■ ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Display*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Backlight*** ▶▶ ■

Set Backlight & Power Saving	▶▶ ***Lighting*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ▶▶ ■ (▶▶ Enter a time before the power saving mode is activated) • Press and hold 5 to turn the backlight on/off. • When the power saving mode is activated, nothing is shown in Standby and the Keypad backlight flashes. Pressing any key cancels the power saving mode.
Set Backlight during Charging	▶▶ ***Charging*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Standard*** or ***All time ON*** ▶▶ ■
Set Keypad Backlight	▶▶ ***Area*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***LCD+Keys*** or ***LCD*** ▶▶ ■
Set Brightness of Backlight	▶▶ ***Brightness*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Bright***, ***Middle*** or ***Dark*** ▶▶ ■ • To use Display at its brightest setting, set ***Brightness*** to ***Bright***. It is set to ***Middle*** at time of purchase. Battery operation time is shorter when set to ***Bright***.

Shortcuts

Start Here ■ ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Display*** ▶▶ ■

Set Shortcut Theme	▶▶ ***Shortcut*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a theme ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■ • Press ✉ to see details of the selected theme.

Change Icon Design of a Theme	▶▶ ***Shortcut*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a theme ▶▶ [✉] ▶▶ Select an icon ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***CHG icon image*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Select icon image*** or ***Default icon image*** ▶▶ [■] (▶▶ Set an icon)
Change Order of Icons of a Theme	▶▶ ***Shortcut*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a theme ▶▶ [✉] ▶▶ Select an icon ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Sort*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a position ▶▶ [■]
Copy Icons to Another Theme	▶▶ ***Shortcut*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a theme ▶▶ [✉] ▶▶ Select an icon ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Copy*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Copy this***, ***Copy selected*** or ***Copy all*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a destination theme ▶▶ [■] (▶▶ Select icons ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [✉]) • When *Copy selected* or *Copy all* is selected, select *YES* and press [■] at the end of the procedure.
Move Icons to Another Theme	▶▶ ***Shortcut*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a theme ▶▶ [✉] ▶▶ Select an icon ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Move*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Move this***, ***Move selected*** or ***Move all*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a destination theme ▶▶ [■] (▶▶ Select icons ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [✉]) ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]
Delete Icons of a Theme	▶▶ ***Shortcut*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a theme ▶▶ [✉] ▶▶ Select an icon ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Delete*** ▶▶ [■] • To Select *Delete this* ▶▶ *Delete this* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■] • To Select *Delete selected* ▶▶ *Delete selected* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select icons ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [✉] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■] • To Select *Delete all* ▶▶ *Delete all* ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ [■]
Show New Message Indicator as 3D Animation	▶▶ ***3D display setting*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***ON*** ▶▶ [■] • Emotion indicators and pictographs appear as 3D animation.

Menu Display Settings

Start Here ■ ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Display*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Menu display set*** ▶▶ ■

Set List View or Details View	▶▶ ***Menu display*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***List*** or ***Detail*** ▶▶ ■ • You can set any display method available in a menu selectable from ■ ▶▶ *Settings* ▶▶ ■.
Set Main Menu Theme	▶▶ ***Theme*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a theme ▶▶ ■
Change Icon Design (Original Theme)	▶▶ ***Theme*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Original theme*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a menu item ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Set an image • You can change Main Menu icons to a preferred image.
Change Background (Original Theme)	▶▶ ***Theme*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Original theme*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Background image*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Set an image • You can change the background of Main Menu to a preferred image.
Reset Original Theme Settings	▶▶ ***Theme*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Original theme*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a menu item ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Reset*** or ***All reset*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■ • Only available when any Original theme settings have been changed.
Remember Last Menu Accessed	▶▶ ***Memory focus*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** ▶▶ ■
Reset Menu Order	▶▶ ***Reset menu op. log*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

Start Here ■ ▶▶ Y!

Add a Menu Item to Original Menu	▶▶ ***<Not recorded>*** ▶▶ ✉ ▶▶ ✥ to select a function ▶▶ ■
Change Order of Original Menu Items	▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Sort*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a position ▶▶ ■
Cancel Original Menu Items	▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Release*** or ***Release all*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■
Reset Original Menu	▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Reset org. menu*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

Standby Indicators

Enable Indicator Selector	■ ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Display*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Icons setting*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** ▶▶ ■ • The indicators at the top of Display are enabled by pressing ▯ in Standby. Use ✥ to select an indicators and press ■ to access the corresponding function.

Illumination Panel

Start Here ■ ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Display*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Illumi*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** ▶▶ ■

Set Animation	▶▶ ***Close display***, ***Connection***, ***Phone***, ***Video Call*** or ***Mail*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Set an animation ▶▶ ✉ • When *Close display* is selected, *Clock display* or *Random* can be set.
Clock Pattern	▶▶ ***Clock display*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a pattern ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ✉
Show Clock during Charging	▶▶ ***Clock disp. for charge*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ✉ • When *ON* is set, the *Simple* pattern clock is shown during charging.

Specify Clock Display Interval	▶▶ ***Time signal*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***30 minutes*** or ***60 minutes*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ✉

Incoming Call/Message Alerts

Start Here ■ ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Incoming Call*** ▶▶ ■

Adjust Ringtone Volume	▶▶ ***Ring volume*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Phone***, ***Video Call*** or ***Mail*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ◘ ▶▶ ■ • When ***Step*** is set, the ringtone volume increases every 3 seconds. When ***Silent*** is set, no ringtone sounds.
Set a Ringtone	▶▶ ***Select ring tone*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Phone***, ***Video Call*** or ***Mail*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Select ring tone*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Set a ringtone
Set Random Playback of Melodies as Ringtones	▶▶ ***Select ring tone*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Phone***, ***Video Call*** or ***Mail*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Select ring tone*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Random melody*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ ■ • Melodies in the selected folder are played at random as ringtones.
Set Ringing Duration of Incoming Message Ringtone	▶▶ ***Mail ring time*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Mail*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter ringing duration • When ***OFF*** is set, no ringtone sounds and handset does not vibrate when receiving messages.
Set Vibration*	▶▶ ***Vibrator*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Phone***, ***Video Call*** or ***Mail*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a pattern ▶▶ ■ • When ***Melody linkage*** is set, handset vibrates to the melody set as ringtone.
Set Illumination Color	▶▶ ***Illumination*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Set color*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Phone***, ***Video Call*** or ***Mail*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a color ▶▶ ■ • When ***Illumi*** is set to ***ON***, illumination for incoming calls does not operate.

* When *Vibrator* is not set to *OFF*, be careful not to let handset fall off a desk or slide too close to a stove, etc. when it vibrates.

Set Illumination Pattern	▶▶ ***Illumination*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Set pattern*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Standard*** or ***Melody linkage*** ▶▶ ■ • Even when *Melody linkage* is set, Illumination may not flash to the melody depending on the set ringtone.
Set Illumination to Flash for Missed Calls/New Messages	▶▶ ***Illumination*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Missed info*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** ▶▶ ■
Set an Incoming Call/Message Image	▶▶ ***Select ring tone*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Phone***, ***Video Call*** or ***Mail*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Select calling disp.*** or ***Select receiving disp.*** ▶▶ ■ (▶▶ ***My Picture*** or ***Videos*** ▶▶ ■) ▶▶ Set an image/video
Show Phone Book Entry Images for Incoming Calls/Messages	▶▶ ***Disp. phonebook image*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** ▶▶ ■

Answering Incoming Calls

Start Here ■ ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Incoming Call*** ▶▶ ■

Set to Answer Calls by Pressing Any Key	▶▶ ***Answer setting*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Any key answer*** ▶▶ ■ • You can answer incoming voice calls by pressing a key from [↗], ■, [0] - [9], [＊], [クリア], [✉], [Y!], [▲] and [◆]. The any key answer function is disabled for incoming video calls.
Set to Mute Ringtone by Pressing Any Key	▶▶ ***Answer setting*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Quick silent*** ▶▶ ■ • You can mute the ringtone by pressing a key from [0] - [9], [＊], [クリア], [✉] (for voice calls only), [Y!], [▲] and [◆] or by opening handset.

Manner Mode

Start Here ■ ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Incoming Call*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Manner Mode Set.*** ▶▶ ■

Set Manner Mode Type	▶▶ Select a Manner Mode ▶▶ ■ • When *Super silent* is set, all tones emitted through the earpiece are also muted.
Configure Original Manner Mode	▶▶ *Original* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Set each item ▶▶ ✉

Checking Call Logs

Start Here ■ ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Incoming Call*** ▶▶ ■

Emit Beeps to Notify of Missed Calls When ▾ is Pressed	▶▶ *Info notice setting* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *ON* ▶▶ ■ • A set of two short beeps sounds twice when you have missed calls, and three short beeps sound when you have no missed calls.
Change Colors of Names/Phone Numbers/E-mail Addresses in Call/ Message Log Windows	▶▶ *Disp. call/receive No.* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a color ▶▶ ■ • Pressing ✉ toggles the color palette between 16 colors and 256 colors. • To reset the color settings to default, press Y!.

Sounds

Start Here ■ ▸▸ ***Settings*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Other Settings*** ▸▸ ■

Set Key Operation Tones	▸▸ ***Keypad sound*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***ON*** ▸▸ ■
Set to Play Charging Start/End Tones	▸▸ ***Charge sound*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***ON*** ▸▸ ■

Start Here ■ ▸▸ ***Tools*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Voice Announce*** ▸▸ ■

Record Sound to Set as Ringtone or Outgoing Message	▸▸ Select an item ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***YES*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ Record sound (for about 15 seconds) • Press ■ to stop recording.
Play Recorded Sound	▸▸ Select an item with ★ ▸▸ ■
Delete Recorded Sound	▸▸ Select an item with ★ ▸▸ 📷 ▸▸ ***Erase*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***YES*** ▸▸ ■

Earphone-Microphone

Start Here ■ ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ ■

Audio Output	▶▶ ***External Connection*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Headset usage setting*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Headset+speaker*** or ***Headset only*** ▶▶ ■
Microphone Setting	▶▶ ***External Connection*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Select microphone*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Internal microphone*** or ***External microphone*** ▶▶ ■
Answer Calls Automatically	▶▶ ***External Connection*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Auto answer setting*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Phone*** or ***Video Call*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter ring time
Save a Phone Number to Dial with an Earphone-Microphone	▶▶ ***Dialing*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Headset sw to dial*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Voice call*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a Phone Book search method ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Search Phone Book ▶▶ Select an entry ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a phone number ▶▶ ■

Phone Book

Set Preferred Search Method	[Phone Book Search] window (P. 2-21) ▶▶ Select a search method ▶▶ [✉] ▶▶ ***OK*** ▶▶ [■] • To cancel the preferred search method, press [クリア] in each Search window, select the search method with ★, and then press [✉].
Change Group Name	[Phone Book Entry List] window (P. 2-20) ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Group setting*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a group ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Edit group name ▶▶ [■] • You cannot change the name of *No Group*.
Do Not Send Phone Book Entry Images via Infrared	[■] ▶▶ ***Tools*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Forwarding Image*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***OFF*** ▶▶ [■]

Outgoing Calls

Start Here [■] ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Dialing*** ▶▶ [■]

Save Area Code and Country Code as Prefix Numbers	▶▶ ***Prefix setting*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ [✉] ▶▶ Enter name ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter prefix numbers ▶▶ [■]
Save Touch Tones	▶▶ ***Pause dial*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ [✉] ▶▶ Enter touch tone numbers ▶▶ [■] • Press and hold [✱] to enter "P" (Pause).
Set Numbers after "✱" as Sub Address	▶▶ ***Sub-address setting*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***ON*** ▶▶ [■]

International Calls

Start Here ■ ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Dialing*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Int'l dial assistance*** ▶▶ ■

Change International Access Code Automatically Dialed with "+"	▶▶ ***Auto int'l call set.*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a country code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an international access code ▶▶ ■ • When *OFF* is set, the international access code is not entered when you press and hold 0. • You can select the international access code you saved in *IDD Prefix setting*.
Change a Country Code	▶▶ ***Country Code setting*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ ✉ ▶▶ Enter country name ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter country code ▶▶ ■
Save an International Access Code	▶▶ ***IDD Prefix setting*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ ✉ ▶▶ Enter international access name ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter international access code ▶▶ ■

Call Settings

Start Here ■ ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Talk*** ▶▶ ■

Set Reconnection Tone	▶▶ ***Reconnect signal*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***High tone*** or ***Low tone*** ▶▶ ■
Set Noise Reduction	▶▶ ***Noise reduction*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** ▶▶ ■
Set Weak Signal Alarm	▶▶ ***Quality alarm*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***High tone*** or ***Low tone*** ▶▶ ■ • Calls may be disconnected without sounding the alarm when signal becomes suddenly too weak.

Set Illumination Color for Incoming Calls during Calls	▶▶ ***Illumination in talk*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a color ▶▶ ■
Set to Mute by Closing Handset	▶▶ ***Setting when folded*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***No tone*** ▶▶ ■
Set to End Call by Closing Handset	▶▶ ***Setting when folded*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***End the call*** ▶▶ ■
Set a Hold Message	▶▶ ***Set hold tone*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***On hold tone*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a hold tone ▶▶ ■

Call Costs

Start Here ■ ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Call Time/Charge*** ▶▶ ■

Set Auto Reset of Total Call Cost	▶▶ ***Auto reset total cost*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Auto reset*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ▶▶ ■ (▶▶ Enter PIN2 ▶▶ ■) • When *ON* is set, the total call cost indication is automatically reset to zero at twelve midnight on the first day of each month.
Set/Cancel a Maximum Call Cost Limit*	▶▶ ***Set Max Cost Limit*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ¥ ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter cost limit ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ 🔔 ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ✉ ▶▶ Enter PIN2 ▶▶ ■ • A call ends automatically and ACM appears in Display when the total call cost exceeds the set maximum limit. • When the set total call cost limit has been reached, all outgoing calls are disabled. To enable outgoing calls, set the maximum call cost limit to 0: ▶▶ *Set Max Cost Limit* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ¥ ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ✉ ▶▶ Enter PIN2 ▶▶ ■

* Depending on your subscription, you may not be able to view call costs. In this instance, you will also not be able to set a cost limit.

Video Calls

Start Here ■ ▸▸ ***Settings*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Video Call*** ▸▸ ■

Set an Image to be Sent during Video Calls	▸▸ ***Select image*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ Select an item ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Pre-installed*** or ***Original*** ▸▸ ■ • To set an image other than the preinstalled image: ▸▸ *Original* ▸▸ 📷 ▸▸ *Change setting* ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ Set an image
Redial Automatically as Voice Call When Video Call Connection Fails	▸▸ ***Auto redial as voice*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***ON*** ▸▸ ■
Set an Image to Appear in Main Window	▸▸ ***Display setting*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Main display*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Other side*** or ***My side*** ▸▸ ■
Automatically Switch to Handsfree Mode in Video Calls	▸▸ ***Hands-free switch*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***ON*** ▸▸ ■

Global Roaming

Start Here ■ ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Int'l Roaming Set*** ▶▶ ■

Set Operator	▶▶ ***NW search mode*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Manual*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an operator ▶▶ ■ • When *Auto* is set, an available operator is set automatically. • Use this procedure when handset is out of the service area of the currently used operator.
Search Available Operator	▶▶ ***NW search mode*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Network re-search*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an operator ▶▶ ■ • You can select an operator only when *NW search mode* is set to *Manual*.
Set Priority for Operators	▶▶ ***NW search mode*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***PLMN setting*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an operator ▶▶ [camera] ▶▶ ***Change priority*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a position on the priority list ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ [mail] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■ • When *Auto* is set under *NW search mode*, you are automatically connected to the highest priority operator among available operators.
Show Operator Name While Roaming	▶▶ ***Display operator name*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Display ON*** ▶▶ ■

S! Mail Settings

Start Here ✉ ▶▶ ***Mail Setting*** ▶▶ ■

Edit Header/Signature	▶▶ ***Header/Signature*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Edit header*** or ***Edit signature*** ▶▶ ■ (twice) ▶▶ Edit header/signature ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ✉
Insert Header/Signature Automatically	▶▶ ***Header/Signature*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Insert setting*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ✉
Set to Check Delivery	▶▶ ***S! Mail settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Delivery Report*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** ▶▶ ■ • After a recipient receives your S! Mail, a message titled ***S! Mail report*** is sent to your handset.

SMS Settings

Start Here ✉ ▶▶ ***Mail Setting*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***SMS settings*** ▶▶ ■

Set Delivery Confirmation On	▶▶ ***SMS report request*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** ▶▶ ■ • After a recipient receives your SMS message, a message titled ***SMS report*** is sent to your handset.
Set Server Storage Period (SMS)	▶▶ ***SMS validity period*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a period ▶▶ ■ • When ***None*** is set, SMS messages you send are not stored on the server.
Set SMS Input Language	▶▶ ***SMS input character*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Japanese (70char.)*** or ***English (160char.)*** ▶▶ ■

Incoming Message Settings

Start Here ✉ ▶▶ ***Mail Setting*** ▶▶ ■

Customize E-mail Address	▶▶ ***Custom Mail Address*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Follow onscreen instructions
Do Not Show Emotion Indicators	▶▶ ***Emotion/Keyword*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Take the checkmark off from ***Disp emotion*** ▶▶ ✉
Show Keyword Indicators	▶▶ ***Emotion/Keyword*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Put a checkmark to ***Disp keyword*** ▶▶ Select a keyword entry field ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter keyword ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ✉ • When handset receives a mail containing the specified keyword, a keyword indicator - appears. • In case a message contains both the content that matches an emotion indicator (P. 5-6) and a specified keyword, the keyword indicator takes priority.
Delete Keywords	▶▶ ***Emotion/Keyword*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a keyword ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Delete keyword*** or ***Delete all keyword*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Take the checkmark off from ***Disp keyword*** ▶▶ ✉
Set Priority When Receiving Messages during Operation	▶▶ ***Receiving setting*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Alarm preferred*** or ***Operation preferred*** ▶▶ ■
Set Manual Download (S! Mail)	▶▶ ***S! Mail settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Message Download*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Manual*** ▶▶ ■ • The entire message is retrievable by operating handset.

Reply Settings

Change Quotation Marks	✉ ▶▶ ***Mail Setting*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Header/Signature*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Edit Quotation marks*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Edit quotation mark ▶▶ ■

Message View Settings & Others

Start Here ✉ ▶▶ ***Mail Setting*** ▶▶ ■

Set Message List View	▶▶ ***Mail list disp.*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***2 lines***, ***1 line*** or ***1line+body*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Subject***, ***Name*** or ***Address*** ▶▶ ■
Play Attached Melodies Automatically	▶▶ ***Start attachment (auto)*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** ▶▶ ■ • Only melodies in received messages are automatically played.
Set Text Scroll Unit	▶▶ ***Scroll*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***1 line***, ***3 lines*** or ***5 lines*** ▶▶ ■
Set Text Font Size	▶▶ ***Font size*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a size ▶▶ ■
Check Mail Settings	▶▶ ***Check settings*** ▶▶ ■
Reset Mail Settings	▶▶ ***Reset*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

SMS Server Settings

Start Here ■ ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Connection Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***SMS center selection*** ▶▶ ■

Change SMS Center Address	▶▶ ***819066519300*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter SMS center address ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***International*** or ***Unknown*** ▶▶ ■ • 819066519300 is preset at the time of purchase. SMS may become unavailable if Center address is changed.
Reset to SoftBank SMS Center Address	▶▶ ***Reset*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

Internet

Start Here for Yahoo! Keitai Press and hold [Y!] ▶▶ ***Browser Settings*** ▶▶ ■

Start Here for PC Site Browser Press and hold [Y!] ▶▶ ***PC Site Browser*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Pc site brw. Settings*** ▶▶ ■

Set Scroll Unit	▶▶ ***Scroll*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Whole page, Half page*** or ***Single line*** ▶▶ ■
Auto Download On/Off (Image/ Melody)	▶▶ ***Downloads*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Display Images*** or ***Play Sounds*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***On*** or ***Off*** ▶▶ ■
Clear Cache	▶▶ ***Memory manager*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Delete cache*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■
Delete Cookies	▶▶ ***Memory manager*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Delete cookies*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■
Initialize Memory Status of Internet	▶▶ ***Initialized Browser*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■
Set Whether to Send Manufacture Number	▶▶ ***Security*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Manufacture number*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ▶▶ ■
Set Send Referer On/Off	▶▶ ***Security*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Send referer*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ▶▶ ■
Enable/Disable Cookies	▶▶ ***Security*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Cookie Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an option ▶▶ ■
Set Whether to Activate Scripts	▶▶ ***Security*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Script Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an option ▶▶ ■
Check Internet Settings	▶▶ ***Check settings*** or ***Check Settings*** ▶▶ ■
Reset Internet Settings	▶▶ ***Reset*** or ***Restore Default*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

Yahoo! Keitai

Start Here Press and hold [Y!] ▶▶ ***Browser Settings*** ▶▶ [■]

Set Font Size	▶▶ ***Font size*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a size ▶▶ [■]
Set Flash® Sound On/Off	▶▶ ***Flash Sound effect*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ▶▶ [■]

PC Site Browser

Start Here Press and hold [Y!] ▶▶ ***PC Site Browser*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***PC site brw. Settings*** ▶▶ [■]

Do Not Show Alert When Activating PC Site Browser & Switching Browsers	▶▶ ***Warning messages*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***OFF*** ▶▶ [■]
Set Page Layout	▶▶ ***Display mode settings*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***PC screen*** or ***Small screen*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a size ▶▶ [■]

S! Quick News

Start Here Press and hold [Y!] ▶▶ ***S! Quick News*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ ■

Hide S! Quick News from Standby	▶▶ ***Standby Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Standby Disp. Set.*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***OFF*** ▶▶ ■ (twice)
Set Ticker Speed	▶▶ ***Standby Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Speed Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Fast***, ***Normal*** or ***Slow*** ▶▶ ■ (twice)
Show Read/Unread Information	▶▶ ***Standby Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Unread & Read Set.*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Unread Only*** or ***Unread & Read*** ▶▶ ■ (twice)
Hide Images	▶▶ ***Set Image Disp.*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***OFF*** ▶▶ ■ (twice)
Reset Registered Contents	▶▶ ***Del. Quick News*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■ (twice) ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ (three times)

Network Connection Settings

Set Whether to Send Location Information	■ ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Send Location Info*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Confirm***, ***Send*** or ***Not Send*** ▶▶ ■ • When ***Not Send*** is set, you cannot access pages/contents that use handset location information.

Channel List

Start Here ■ ▶▶ ***TV*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Channel List*** ▶▶ ■

Edit Title	▶▶ Select a channel list ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Edit title*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Edit title ▶▶ ■
Delete a Channel List	▶▶ Select a channel list ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Delete this*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■ • The currently used channel list cannot be deleted.
Assign Channels to Remote Control Numbers	▶▶ Select a channel list ▶▶ ✉ ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Remote control No.*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a remote control number ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a channel ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Repeat the same step ▶▶ ✉ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■
Delete a Channel	▶▶ Select a channel list ▶▶ ✉ ▶▶ Select a channel ▶▶ 📷 ▶▶ ***Delete this*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

Image & Sound

Start Here ■ ▶▶ ***TV*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***User Settings*** ▶▶ ■

Set Subtitle Display	▶▶ ***Subtitles*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON (Wide: Bottom)***, ***ON (Wide: Top)*** or ***OFF*** ▶▶ ■
Show/Hide Icons in Landscape View	▶▶ ***Icon always show*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ▶▶ ■
Dim Backlight (Battery Saving)	▶▶ ***ECO mode*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■ • Using the same step will cancel ***ECO mode*** when ***ECO mode*** is ON.
Backlight Always On for TV	▶▶ ***Display light*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Constant light*** ▶▶ ■ • You cannot set the Display light when ***ECO mode*** is ON.
Backlight Time for TV	▶▶ ***Display light*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Lighting duration*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter lighting time
Sound Output When Handset Closed	▶▶ ***TV sound while closed*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** ▶▶ ■ • When ***ON*** is set and handset is closed, the web page accessed from Data Broadcast may be updated automatically incurring packet transmission fees.

Data Broadcasts

Start Here ■ ▶▶ ***TV*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***User Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Data BC settings*** ▶▶ ■

Set Image Download On/Off	▶▶ ***Set image disp.*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ▶▶ ■
Enable/Disable Sound Effects	▶▶ ***Sound effect*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ▶▶ ■
Ask Before Web Connection	▶▶ ***Reset disp. set.*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** or ***NO*** ▶▶ ■ • Once you select ***YES (confirm once)*** in a confirmation window for accessing a web page from Data Broadcast, the window no longer appears. Use this procedure to set the window to reappear.

Recording Programs

Continue/End Recording at Low Battery	■ ▶▶ ***TV*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***User Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Rec. while low battery*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ▶▶ ■

Other Settings

Start Here ■ ▶▶ ***TV*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***User Settings*** ▶▶ ■

Check TV Settings	▶▶ ***Check TV settings*** ▶▶ ■
Reset Channel Settings	▶▶ ***Reset channel setting*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■
Clear Data Broadcast Memory	▶▶ ***Reset storage area*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select an affiliated station ▶▶ 📷 • To Select *Delete this* ▶▶ *Delete this* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■ • To Select *Delete all* ▶▶ *Delete all* ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ *YES* ▶▶ ■
Rest TV Settings	▶▶ ***Reset TV settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■

Camera/Video Settings

Set Image Quality	[Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-6)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-8) ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Quality setting*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a quality ▶▶ [■] ・ You cannot set this in BI-DO-RI mode.
Set File Size	[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-8) ▶▶ [3] ▶▶ Select a file size ▶▶ [■]
Set White Balance	[Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-6)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-8) ▶▶ [6] ▶▶ Select an item ▶▶ [■] ・ You cannot set this in BI-DO-RI mode. ・ In Photo Viewfinder, you need to set ***Best Shot*** (P. 7-12) to ***OFF*** before setting white balance.
Reduce Flicker	[Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-5, P. 7-6)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-8) ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Camera Settings*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Flicker*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Auto, Mode 1 (50Hz)*** or ***Mode 2 (60Hz)*** ▶▶ [■]
Set Shutter Sound	[Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-5, P. 7-6)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-8) ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Shutter sound*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a shutter sound ▶▶ [■]

File Storage & Continuous Shooting

Set Storage Location	[Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-5, P. 7-6)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-8) ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Select to save*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Phone*** or ***microSD*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select a folder ▶▶ [■] • To save videos on memory card, select a folder of Inbox.
Save Images/Videos Automatically	[Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-5, P. 7-6)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-8) ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Auto save set*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***ON*** ▶▶ [■] • Still images and videos shot with handset camera are saved to the folders specified in *Select to save*. • You cannot set this when *File size setting* is set to *Long time* during video shooting. • The setting for *Auto save set* is enabled for both still image and video shooting.
Set Interval/Frame Number for Continuous Shooting	[Continuous Shooting Viewfinder] (P. 7-10) ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Interval/Number*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Shot interval*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***0.5 seconds***, ***1.0 seconds*** or ***2.0 seconds*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Shot number*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter number of shots ▶▶ [■]

Playback Window

Change Design	[Music Player Playback] window (P. 9-4) ▶▶ ◙ ▶▶ ***Action setting*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Change skin*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select a design ▶▶ ■
Set Image Display Size	[Video Player Playback] window (P. 9-4) ▶▶ ◙ ▶▶ ***Action setting*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Set image disp.*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Normal*** or ***Fit in display*** ▶▶ ■

When Running S! Appli

Start Here ■ ▶▶ ***S! Appli*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ ■

Set Sound Volume	▶▶ ***Sound/Vib settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Volume*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ◘ to adjust volume ▶▶ ■
Set Vibration	▶▶ ***Sound/Vib settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Vibration*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ▶▶ ■
Set Backlight	▶▶ ***Backlight settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Switch On/Off*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Always ON***, ***Always OFF*** or ***Link To phone set.*** ▶▶ ■
Set Blinking of Backlight	▶▶ ***Backlight settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Blink*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ▶▶ ■

Start Here ■ ▶▶ ***S! Appli*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***S! Appli List*** ▶▶ ■

Allow/Prohibit Network Connection	▶▶ Select an S! Appli ▶▶ ◙ ▶▶ ***Security settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Net access*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Select whether or not to allow network communication ▶▶ ■

Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Write Personal Information	▶▶ Select an S! Appli ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Security settings*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Write user data*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Select whether or not to allow writing personal information ▶▶ [■]
Reset Security Settings	▶▶ Select an S! Appli ▶▶ [📷] ▶▶ ***Security settings*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Reset security set.*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

S! Appli Settings

Start Here [■] ▶▶ ***S! Appli*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ [■]

Reset S! Appli Settings	▶▶ ***Reset*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Set to Default*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]
Delete All S! Appli	▶▶ ***Reset*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***Delete All S! App*** ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ [■] ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ [■]

Text Entry

Start Here ■ ▸▸ ***Settings*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Other Settings*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Character input set*** ▸▸ ■

Set Text Input Method	▸▸ ***Input mode*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ Select an input method ▸▸ ■
Set Word Prediction	▸▸ ***Prediction*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ▸▸ ■
Set T9 Suggestions in Kanji/Hiragana	▸▸ ***T9 change mode*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***T9 Kanji change mode*** or ***T9 Kana change mode*** ▸▸ ■
Clear Learning History	▸▸ ***Clear learned*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ Enter Security code ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***T9/Expect words/ Pic.*** or ***Kana/Kanji change/face*** ▸▸ ■
Change Font Size	▸▸ ***CHG input size*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ Select a size ▸▸ ■

Osaifu-Keitai®

Set illumination for IC Card	■ ▸▸ ***Tools*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Osaifu-Keitai*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***IC Card Illumination*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ▸▸ ■ • When the *Illumi* setting is *ON*, the setting for IC Card illumination is disabled.
Delete all Lifestyle-Appli	■ ▸▸ ***S! Appli*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Settings*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Reset*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***Delete All LifeApp*** ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ Enter Security code ▸▸ ■ ▸▸ ***YES*** ▸▸ ■

Resetting Handset

Start Here ■ ▶▶ ***Settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***Other Settings*** ▶▶ ■

Reset All Settings to Default	▶▶ ***Reset settings*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■
Initialize Handset to Default Status	▶▶ ***Initialize*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ Enter Security code ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■ ▶▶ ***YES*** ▶▶ ■ • When the initialization is completed, handset automatically shuts down and restarts. • When handset is initialized, all data downloaded and saved on handset are deleted and cannot be restored. • Your Security code will also be reset to default.

Appendix

14

Function / Currently Active Function	Mail	Yahoo! Keitai menu	S! Appli	Settings	Data Folder	Tools	Optional Services	Phone Book	Own Data	MUSIC	TV	Camera	Original Menu
Mail Group Function	○*2	○	○	○*6	○	○*8	○	○*13	○	○	○	○	○
Yahoo! Keitai Group Function	○	×	○	○*6	○	○*8	○	○*13	○	○	○	○	○
S! Appli Group Function	○	○	×	○*6	○	○*8	○	○*13	○	○	○	○	○
Settings Group Function	○	○	○	×	○	○*8	×	○*13	○	○	○	○	○
Tools Group Function*1	○	○	○	○*6	×	×	○	×	×	○*6	○*6	×	○
TV & MUSIC Group Function	○*3	○*4	○*5	○*6	○*4	○*6	○	○*13	○	×	×	○*16	○
During a Voice Call	○	○	×	×*7	×	○*9	○*11*12	○*13	○*14	×	×*15	○*17	○
During a Video Call	×	×	×	×	×	×*10	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
During Packet Transmission with a PC Connected	○	○	○	○*6	○	○*8*9	○	○*13	○	×	×*15	○	○

○: Can be activated. ×: Cannot be activated.

*1 Except ***Receive Ir Data***, ***microSD Manager*** and ***USIM Operation*** which cannot be activated with another function.

*2 ***Compose Message*** and ***Compose SMS*** cannot be activated at the same time.

*3 Audio functions such as those for playing attached melodies and videos cannot be activated at the same time as Music Player or TV.

*4 Audio functions such as those for playing melodies and videos cannot be activated at the same time as Music Player. TV is temporarily paused.
*5 S! Appli cannot be activated when Music Player is playing. TV is temporarily paused.
*6 Cannot be activated depending on the function.
*7 Only ***Pause dial, IC Card Lock Set.*** and ***Keypad sound*** are available.
*8 ***Receive Ir Data***, ***microSD Manager***, ***Voice Announce*** and ***USIM Operation*** are unavailable.
*9 Only the following functions are available: ***Bar Code Reader***, ***Schedule***, ***To Do List***, ***Text Memo***, ***Calculator***, voice memo during a call, ***Account Details***, ***Text Reader*** and ***Dictionary***
*10 Voice memo during a call is available only when you press and hold [key].
*11 Playing messages at Voice Mail Center is impossible.
*12 ***Caller ID Notification*** is unavailable.
*13 ***Restrictions*** is unavailable.
*14 ***Common Phrases*** and ***Own Dictionary*** are unavailable.
*15 Only ***Booking Program List*** and ***Timer Recording List*** are available.
*16 Camera cannot be activated at the same time as Music Player or TV.
*17 ***Movie*** is unavailable.

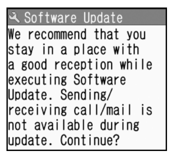
Check if software on handset needs to be updated, and update it through the network if necessary.

- Before updating software, turn off handset and restart it to make sure that all handset functions have ended.
- Disconnect the USB cable from handset. The software update, if it is done with the USB cable connected, may not be properly completed.
- No transmission fees apply to check/update software.
- Updating software may take 30 minutes or so. You cannot use handset until the software update is finished.
- Make sure battery is sufficiently charged before updating software.
- Update software in a location of good signal reception. Do not change locations while updating software.
- Never remove battery or USIM Card or turn off handset while updating software.
- You cannot use any other handset functions while updating software.
- You can update software without deleting data you saved on handset. However, data may be lost depending on the handset condition (e.g. a malfunction). We recommend that you make backups of important data (though it may be impossible to back up some downloaded data) before updating software. SoftBank is not liable for any data loss.
- If software update fails, handset may become inoperable. If this happens, contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 14-48).

Updating Software

1 ■ » ***Settings*** » ■ » ***Other Settings*** » ■ » ***Software Update*** » ■

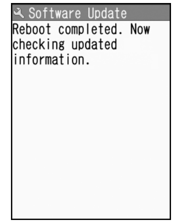
2 ***Software Update*** » ■



3 **Follow onscreen instructions**

◎After Software is Updated

After an update completion message appears, handset restarts automatically, and an update results window opens.



Software Update Completion Window

Checking Update Results

1 ■ » ***Settings*** » ■ » ***Other Settings*** » ■ » ***Software Update*** » ■

2 ***Update Result*** » ■

Using Regular Updates

A confirmation window for software update opens at the scheduled time. Press ■ or leave handset for a while to start automatic software update.

- If other functions are being used at the scheduled time, software update cannot start. End all functions to open the software update confirmation window (if you keep using other functions for more than ten minutes after a scheduled time, software update is canceled).

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Cannot turn on handset.	Are you pressing and holding [key] ?	P. 1-15
	Is battery properly installed?	P. 1-11
	Is battery exhausted?	P. 1-19
	Is the battery terminal dirty?	-
It takes a long time to turn on handset.	It takes time if there are large amounts of data (e.g. Phone Book entries) saved on handset.	-
Cannot charge battery. Charging Indicator does not light up.	Is battery properly installed?	P. 1-11
	Is the charger (sold separately) plugged into an outlet properly?	P. 1-14
	Is the charger (sold separately) connected to handset properly? Is the connector of AC Charger correctly inserted into handset?	P. 1-14

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Battery drains too fast.	Has the battery reached the end of its service life? The battery life may shorten depending on the usage environment.	P. 1-11
	Do you use handset where 圏外 is displayed often?	P. 1-6
	The battery operation time fluctuates according to how you use handset.	P. 1-11
Cannot make calls.	Is handset out of service area or in a location with a weak signal?	-
	Are you calling using the area code?	-
	Are you covering the area around the antenna with your fingers?	P. 1-2
	Are you pressing [key] after entering the phone number?	P. 3-3
	Is the USIM card inserted?	P. 1-10
	Has Emission OFF Mode been set?	P. 4-5
	Is a maximum call cost limit set?	P. 13-18

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Cannot make calls using Keypad.	Is Keypad Lock active?	P. 4-4
	Is ***Dial/sending mail*** specified to be locked in Custom Lock mode?	P. 4-3
	Is ***Restrict dialing*** set?	P. 2-23
A message is heard saying that the number you have reached is not in service.	Did you include the area code when dialing a phone number?	-
Only a busy tone is heard after dialing a phone number.	Is ***Network is busy at this moment Please try again later*** shown in Display?	-
	Is the USIM card inserted?	P. 1-10
	Is handset out of service area or in a location with a weak signal?	-

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Cannot receive calls. The incoming ringtone does not sound.	Is handset in Manner Mode?	P. 1-17
	Are you outside the service area or where signals are weak?	-
	Have incoming calls been prohibited?	P. 4-5
	Is handset in Emission OFF Mode?	P. 4-5
	Is ***Ring volume*** set to ***Silent***?	P. 13-11
圏外 is displayed.	Are you covering the area around the antenna with your fingers?	P. 1-2
	Are you outside the service area or where signals are weak?	-
The other party's voice is difficult to hear during calls.	Is the earpiece properly placed against your ear?	-
	Is anything obstructing the speaker if it is in handsfree mode?	-
	Is the earpiece volume properly adjusted?	P. 3-3, P. 3-8
The other party's voice is too loud during calls.	Is the earpiece volume properly adjusted?	P. 3-3, P. 3-8

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
A snapping sound occurs during calls.	Are you in a location with weak signals? This sound occurs when signals are weak and handset switches to a different area.	-
Handset is slow to react when keys are pressed.	This may occur when there are large amounts of data saved on handset, or when large amounts of data are being transferred between handset and memory card.	-
Cannot hear key operation tones.	Is ***Keypad sound*** set to ***OFF***?	P. 13-14
	Is handset in Manner Mode?	P. 1-17
Side keys are inoperable when handset is closed.	Is Keypad Lock active?	P. 4-4
	Is ***Side key guard*** set to ***ON***?	P. 1-19
There is no response when keys are pressed.	Has Dial Lock or Keypad Lock been set?	P. 4-3, P. 4-4

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Nothing is shown in Display.	Is power saving mode activated?	P. 13-7
	If handset is left in a very hot place, it may automatically shut down. If this happens, move handset to a location at an appropriate temperature (5 to 35°C) and wait for a while until the keys become operable again.	-
Display is hard to see.	Is ***Brightness*** under ***Backlight*** set to ***Dark***?	P. 13-7
	Has Screen Filter been set to ***ON***? You can turn Screen Filter on/off by pressing and holding 8.	P. 13-6
The Display backlight do not light.	Is ***Lighting*** under ***Backlight*** set to ***OFF***?	P. 13-7
	Press and hold 5 to turn on/off the backlight.	P. 13-7
Nothing is shown in Illumination Panel.	Is ***Illumi*** set to ***OFF***?	P. 13-10

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
A message appears instead of an image or video.	The image or video is unavailable with the function being used when any of the following messages appears. ***Not available***, ***Expiredfile*** and ***No preview data***	-
☒ appears instead of an image or preview.	The image file may be corrupted.	-
The Flash® clock shown in Standby is stopped.	Is Keypad Lock active?	P. 4-4
The Flash® shown in Standby is paused.	If クリア or ⌐ are pressed while a wallpaper Flash® is running it will pause. Press クリア again or shortly wait for it to run again.	-
Images shot with handset camera flicker.	When shooting images indoors, flicker may occur due to fluorescent lighting, etc. Changing the ***Flicker*** setting may help reduce flicker.	P. 13-32

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Still images or videos shot with handset camera are too bright.	Were the still images or videos shot with ***Flicker*** not set to ***Auto***? Set ***Flicker*** to ***Auto***.	P. 13-32
Still images or videos shot with handset camera are blurred.	Select a Photo Mode suited to the subject or scene.	P. 7-12
Cannot watch TV.	Is handset out of the digital terrestrial broadcast service area or in a location with a weak signal?	-
	Are the channel settings done?	P. 8-4
Insert USIM appears.	USIM Card is not properly inserted or may be damaged.	P. 1-10
Insert microSD appears.	Memory card is not properly inserted or may be damaged.	P. 11-10
Replace with a new one or check the disk appears.	Perform a scan disk on memory card.	P. 11-17

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Netwok is busy at this moment Please try again later appears.	This may be due to errors or heavy traffic on the voice call lines or packet transmission network. Try again after a while. You can still make emergency calls to 110, 119 and 118.	-
Function cannot operate any more appears.	End one of the currently active functions to continue operation.	-
The earphone-microphone cannot be used.	Has ***Select microphone*** been set to ***Internal microphone***?	P. 13-15
Other function active Cannot start appears.	These messages appear when you try to use an unavailable function when another function is active.	-
Other function active Cannot operate appears.		

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Memory shortage appears.	This message appears when operation is interrupted due to insufficient memory. Reboot handset.	-
Connection failed appears.	Network connection is interrupted due to weak signal.	-
	The page you are trying to access is very busy. Try again after a while.	-
(memory card indicator marked with ?) appears.	The indicator appears when a defective memory card is inserted. Perform a scan disk on memory card.	P. 11-17
Osaifu-Keitai® cannot be used.	Has the battery run out?	P. 1-14
	Has IC Card Lock or Call Remote Lock been set?	P. 10-4

In 5-touch Mode

Key	Kanji/hiragana Entry Mode	Katakana Entry Mode	Alphanumeric Entry Mode	Number Entry Mode
1	あいうえおぁぃぅぇぉ	アイウエオァィゥェォ	. @ / ? ! ( ) , − _ : ' ~*5 & ¥ 1 Space	1
2	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	a b c A B C 2	2
3	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	d e f D E F 3	3
4	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ	g h i G H I 4	4
5	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	j k l J K L 5	5
6	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	m n o M N O 6	6
7	まみむめも	マミムメモ	p q r s P Q R S 7	7
8	やゆよゃゅょ	ヤユヨャュョ	t u v T U V 8	8
9	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	w x y z W X Y Z 9	9
0	わをんゎー	ワヲンヮ *1ー	Space 0	0 + *6
✱	゛ ゜ *2, *3	゛ ゜ *2, *3	________ *2, *3	✱ *3
#	、。 ? ! ・ Space *4	、。 ? ! ・ Space *4	.ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp www. .com .html http:// https:// @softbank.ne.jp *7	#

*1 The lower case of “ワ” can be entered in double-byte mode.
*2 Can be toggled between upper case and lower case.
*3 Press and hold ✱ to insert line feed “↲”.
*4 “、_”, “。”, “?”, “!” and “・” cannot be entered when entering readings in Own Dictionary or in USIM Phone Book.
*5 “￣” is entered in double-byte mode.
*6 Press and hold ✱ to enter “+” when entering SMS message addresses.
*7 Not shown in double-byte mode.

In 2-touch Mode

◎In Double-byte Mode

Key (Press First)	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1	あ ぁ	い ぃ	う ぅ	え ぇ	お ぉ	A a	B b	C c	D d	E e
2	か	き	く	け	こ	F f	G g	H h	I i	J j
3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K k	L l	M m	N n	O o
4	た	ち	つ っ	て	と	P p	Q q	R r	S s	T t
5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U u	V v	W w	X x	Y y
6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z z	?	!	―	／
7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&		☎ *1	
8	や ゃ	（	ゆ ゅ	）	よ ょ	＊	＃		♥ *1	*2
9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
0	わ ゎ	を	ん	゛*3 、	゜*3 。	6	7	8	9	0

(Columns 1–0: Press Next)

◎In Single-byte Mode

Key (Press First)	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1	ｱ ｧ	ｲ ｨ	ｳ ｩ	ｴ ｪ	ｵ ｫ	A a	B b	C c	D d	E e
2	ｶ	ｷ	ｸ	ｹ	ｺ	F f	G g	H h	I i	J j
3	ｻ	ｼ	ｽ	ｾ	ｿ	K k	L l	M m	N n	O o
4	ﾀ	ﾁ	ﾂ ｯ	ﾃ	ﾄ	P p	Q q	R r	S s	T t
5	ﾅ	ﾆ	ﾇ	ﾈ	ﾉ	U u	V v	W w	X x	Y y
6	ﾊ	ﾋ	ﾌ	ﾍ	ﾎ	Z z	?	!	-	/
7	ﾏ	ﾐ	ﾑ	ﾒ	ﾓ	¥	&		☎ *1	
8	ﾔ ｬ	(	ﾕ ｭ	)	ﾖ ｮ	*	#		♥ *1	*2
9	ﾗ @	ﾘ /	ﾙ -	ﾚ _	ﾛ :	1 .ne.jp	2 .co.jp	3 .ac.jp	4 @softbank.ne.jp	5
0	ﾜ ~	ｦ '	ﾝ	ﾞ ,	ﾟ .	6 www.	7 .com	8 .html	9 http://	0 https://

(Columns 1–0: Press Next)

- Katakana are entered in double-byte mode when entering readings in USIM Phone Book.

*1 Can be entered as double-byte characters only when entering pictographs is allowed, such as in Text Memo and Common Phrases.

*2 Press 8 0 to toggle between upper-case and lower-case modes. Pressing ＊ after entering an upper case character switches to the lower case character.

*3 "゛ " and "゜ " appear only after the characters to which they can be added. If you try to add "゛ " or "゜ " to other characters, these diacritical marks will be replaced by spaces.

(Shaded cells): Spaces are input.

In T9 Input Mode

Key	Kanji/hiragana Entry Mode	Katakana Entry Mode	Alphanumeric Entry Mode
1	Rowあ, 1	Rowア, 1	. @ / ? ! ( ) , − _ : ' ~[*5]& ¥ 1 Space
2	Rowか, 2	Rowカ, 2	A B C a b c 2
3	Rowさ, 3	Rowサ, 3	D E F d e f 3
4	Rowた, 4	Rowタ, 4	G H I g h i 4
5	Rowな, 5	Rowナ, 5	J K L j k l 5
6	Rowは, 6	Rowハ, 6	M N O m n o 6
7	Rowま, 7	Rowマ, 7	P Q R S p q r s 7
8	Rowや, 8	Rowヤ, 8	T U V t u v 8
9	Rowら, 9	Rowラ, 9	W X Y Z w x y z 9
0	わ を ん ゎ ー , 0	ワ ヲ ン ヮ[*4]ー , 0	0
✳	*1, *2	*1, *2	*2
#	*3	*3	.ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp www. .com .html http:// https:// @softbank.ne.jp[*6]

- For key assignments in number entry mode, see the table in "In 5-touch Mode".
- Numbers do not appear when entering readings in USIM Phone Book and Own Dictionary.
- Press ✳ to toggle the case as follows:
  Caps-lock cancel mode → Shift mode → Caps Lock mode
- Caps Lock mode: All characters are entered in upper case.
  Shift mode: The first characters of words are capitalized and the rest of characters are entered in lower case.
  Caps-lock cancel mode: All characters are entered in lower case.
- Once characters entered in Shift mode have been determined, the mode is switched to Caps-lock cancel mode.

*1 When editing a reading, pressing ✳ adds/cancels "゛" or "゜".

*2 Press and hold ✳ to insert line feed "↲".

*3 "、", "。", "？", "！", "・" and "(space)" appear right after a reading or character is determined.

*4 The lower case of "ワ" can only be entered in double-byte mode.

*5 "￣" is entered in double-byte mode.

*6 Not shown in double-byte mode.

- Actual Kuten Codes may differ in appearance.

1st - 3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
010		(スペース)	、	。	，	．	・	：	；	？
011	！	゛	゜	´	｀	¨	＾	￣	＿	ヽ
012	ヾ	ゝ	ゞ	〃	仝	々	〆	〇	ー	―
013	‐	／	＼	～	‖	｜	…	‥	‘	’
014	“	”	（	）	〔	〕	［	］	｛	｝
015	〈	〉	《	》	「	」	『	』	【	】
016	＋	－	±	×	÷	＝	≠	＜	＞	≦
017	≧	∞	∴	♂	♀	°	′	″	℃	￥
018	＄	￠	￡	％	＃	＆	＊	＠	§	☆
019	★	○	●	◎	◇					
020		◆	□	■	△	▲	▽	▼	※	〒
021	→	←	↑	↓	〓					
022							∈	∋	⊆	⊇
023	⊂	⊃	∪	∩						
024			∧	∨	¬	⇒	⇔	∀	∃	
026	∠	⊥	⌒	∂	∇	≡	≒	≪	≫	√
027	∽	∝	∵	∫	∬					
028			Å	‰	♯	♭	♪	†	‡	¶
029					◯					
031							0	1	2	3
032	4	5	6	7	8	9				
033				A	B	C	D	E	F	G
034	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q
035	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	
036						a	b	c	d	e

1st - 3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
037	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
038	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y
039	z									
040		ぁ	あ	ぃ	い	ぅ	う	ぇ	え	ぉ
041	お	か	が	き	ぎ	く	ぐ	け	げ	こ
042	ご	さ	ざ	し	じ	す	ず	せ	ぜ	そ
043	ぞ	た	だ	ち	ぢ	っ	つ	づ	て	で
044	と	ど	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	は	ば	ぱ
045	ひ	び	ぴ	ふ	ぶ	ぷ	へ	べ	ぺ	ほ
046	ぼ	ぽ	ま	み	む	め	も	ゃ	や	ゅ
047	ゆ	ょ	よ	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	ゎ	わ
048	ゐ	ゑ	を	ん						
050		ァ	ア	ィ	イ	ゥ	ウ	ェ	エ	ォ
051	オ	カ	ガ	キ	ギ	ク	グ	ケ	ゲ	コ
052	ゴ	サ	ザ	シ	ジ	ス	ズ	セ	ゼ	ソ
053	ゾ	タ	ダ	チ	ヂ	ッ	ツ	ヅ	テ	デ
054	ト	ド	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	ハ	バ	パ
055	ヒ	ビ	ピ	フ	ブ	プ	ヘ	ベ	ペ	ホ
056	ボ	ポ	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	ャ	ヤ	ュ
057	ユ	ョ	ヨ	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	ヮ	ワ
058	ヰ	ヱ	ヲ	ン	ヴ	ヵ	ヶ			
060		Α	Β	Γ	Δ	Ε	Ζ	Η	Θ	Ι
061	Κ	Λ	Μ	Ν	Ξ	Ο	Π	Ρ	Σ	Τ
062	ϒ	Φ	Χ	Ψ	Ω					
063				α	β	γ	δ	ε	ζ	η

1st - 3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
064	θ	ι	κ	λ	μ	ν	ξ	ο	π	ρ
065	σ	τ	υ	φ	χ	ψ	ω			
070		А	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ё	Ж	З
071	И	Й	К	Л	М	Н	О	П	Р	С
072	Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы
073	Ь	Э	Ю	Я						
074										а
075	б	в	г	д	е	ё	ж	з	и	й
076	к	л	м	н	о	п	р	с	т	у
077	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы	ь	э
078	ю	я								
080		─	│	┌	┐	┘	└	├	┬	┤
081	┴	┼	━	┃	┏	┓	┛	┗	┣	┳
082	┫	┻	╋	┠	┯	┨	┷	┿	┝	┰
083	┥	┸	╂							
130		①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥	⑦	⑧	⑨
131	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	⑲
132	⑳	Ⅰ	Ⅱ	Ⅲ	Ⅳ	Ⅴ	Ⅵ	Ⅶ	Ⅷ	Ⅸ
133	Ⅹ		㍉	㌔	㌢	㍍	㌘	㌧	㌃	㌶
134	㍑	㍗	㌍	㌦	㌣	㌫	㍊	㌻	㎜	㎝
135	㎞	㎎	㎏	㏄	㎡					
136				㍻	〝	〟	№	㏍	℡	㊤
137	㊥	㊦	㊧	㊨	㈱	㈲	㈹	㍾	㍽	㍼
138	≒	≡	∫	∮	∑	√	⊥	∠	∟	⊿

1st - 3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
139	∵	∩	∪							
	あ									
160		亜	唖	娃	阿	哀	愛	挨	姶	逢
161	葵	茜	穐	悪	握	渥	旭	葦	芦	鯵
162	梓	圧	斡	扱	宛	姐	虻	飴	絢	綾
163	鮎	或	粟	袷	安	庵	按	暗	案	闇
164	鞍	杏								
	い									
164			以	伊	位	依	偉	囲	夷	委
165	威	尉	惟	意	慰	易	椅	為	畏	異
166	移	維	緯	胃	萎	衣	謂	違	遺	医
167	井	亥	域	育	郁	磯	一	壱	溢	逸
168	稲	茨	芋	鰯	允	印	咽	員	因	姻
169	引	飲	淫	胤	蔭					
170		院	陰	隠	韻	吋				
	う									
170							右	宇	烏	羽
171	迂	雨	卯	鵜	窺	丑	碓	臼	渦	嘘
172	唄	欝	蔚	鰻	姥	厩	浦	瓜	閏	噂
173	云	運	雲							
	え									
173				荏	餌	叡	営	嬰	影	映
174	曳	栄	永	泳	洩	瑛	盈	穎	頴	英
175	衛	詠	鋭	液	疫	益	駅	悦	謁	越
176	閲	榎	厭	円	園	堰	奄	宴	延	怨
177	掩	援	沿	演	炎	焔	煙	燕	猿	縁
178	艶	苑	薗	遠	鉛	鴛	塩			

1st - 3rd digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	お									
178								於	汚	甥
179	凹	央	奥	往	応					
180		押	旺	横	欧	殴	王	翁	襖	鴬
181	鴎	黄	岡	沖	荻	億	屋	憶	臆	桶
182	牡	乙	俺	卸	恩	温	穏	音		
	か									
182									下	化
183	仮	何	伽	価	佳	加	可	嘉	夏	嫁
184	家	寡	科	暇	果	架	歌	河	火	珂
185	禍	禾	稼	箇	花	苛	茄	荷	華	菓
186	蝦	課	嘩	貨	迦	過	霞	蚊	俄	峨
187	我	牙	画	臥	芽	蛾	賀	雅	餓	駕
188	介	会	解	回	塊	壊	廻	快	怪	悔
189	恢	懐	戒	拐	改					
190		魁	晦	械	海	灰	界	皆	絵	芥
191	蟹	開	階	貝	凱	劾	外	咳	害	崖
192	慨	概	涯	碍	蓋	街	該	鎧	骸	浬
193	馨	蛙	垣	柿	蛎	鈎	劃	嚇	各	廓
194	拡	撹	格	核	殻	獲	確	穫	覚	角
195	赫	較	郭	閣	隔	革	学	岳	楽	額
196	顎	掛	笠	樫	橿	梶	鰍	潟	割	喝
197	恰	括	活	渇	滑	葛	褐	轄	且	鰹
198	叶	椛	樺	鞄	株	兜	竃	蒲	釜	鎌
199	噛	鴨	栢	茅	萱					
200		粥	刈	苅	瓦	乾	侃	冠	寒	刊
201	勘	勧	巻	喚	堪	姦	完	官	寛	干
202	幹	患	感	慣	憾	換	敢	柑	桓	棺
203	款	歓	汗	漢	澗	潅	環	甘	監	看
204	竿	管	簡	緩	缶	翰	肝	艦	莞	観
205	諌	貫	還	鑑	間	閑	関	陥	韓	館
206	舘	丸	含	岸	巌	玩	癌	眼	岩	翫
207	贋	雁	頑	顔	願					
	き									
207						企	伎	危	喜	器
208	基	奇	嬉	寄	岐	希	幾	忌	揮	机
209	旗	既	期	棋	棄					
210		機	帰	毅	気	汽	畿	祈	季	稀
211	紀	徽	規	記	貴	起	軌	輝	飢	騎
212	鬼	亀	偽	儀	妓	宜	戯	技	擬	欺
213	犠	疑	祇	義	蟻	誼	議	掬	菊	鞠

1st - 3rd digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
214	吉	吃	喫	桔	橘	詰	砧	杵	黍	却
215	客	脚	虐	逆	丘	久	仇	休	及	吸
216	宮	弓	急	救	朽	求	汲	泣	灸	球
217	究	窮	笈	級	糾	給	旧	牛	去	居
218	巨	拒	拠	挙	渠	虚	許	距	鋸	漁
219	禦	魚	亨	享	京					
220		供	侠	僑	兇	競	共	凶	協	匡
221	卿	叫	喬	境	峡	強	彊	怯	恐	恭
222	挟	教	橋	況	狂	狭	矯	胸	脅	興
223	蕎	郷	鏡	響	饗	驚	仰	凝	尭	暁
224	業	局	曲	極	玉	桐	粁	僅	勤	均
225	巾	錦	斤	欣	欽	琴	禁	禽	筋	緊
226	芹	菌	衿	襟	謹	近	金	吟	銀	
	く									
226										九
227	倶	句	区	狗	玖	矩	苦	躯	駆	駈
228	駒	具	愚	虞	喰	空	偶	寓	遇	隅
229	串	櫛	釧	屑	屈					
230		掘	窟	沓	靴	轡	窪	熊	隈	粂
231	栗	繰	桑	鍬	勲	君	薫	訓	群	軍
232	郡									
	け									
232		卦	袈	祁	係	傾	刑	兄	啓	圭
233	珪	型	契	形	径	恵	慶	慧	憩	掲
234	携	敬	景	桂	渓	畦	稽	系	経	継
235	繋	罫	茎	荊	蛍	計	詣	警	軽	頚
236	鶏	芸	迎	鯨	劇	戟	撃	激	隙	桁
237	傑	欠	決	潔	穴	結	血	訣	月	件
238	倹	倦	健	兼	券	剣	喧	圏	堅	嫌
239	建	憲	懸	拳	捲					
240		検	権	牽	犬	献	研	硯	絹	県
241	肩	見	謙	賢	軒	遣	鍵	険	顕	験
242	鹸	元	原	厳	幻	弦	減	源	玄	現
243	絃	舷	言	諺	限					
	こ									
243						乎	個	古	呼	固
244	姑	孤	己	庫	弧	戸	故	枯	湖	狐
245	糊	袴	股	胡	菰	虎	誇	跨	鈷	雇
246	顧	鼓	五	互	伍	午	呉	吾	娯	後
247	御	悟	梧	檎	瑚	碁	語	誤	護	醐
248	乞	鯉	交	佼	侯	候	倖	光	公	功

1st - 3rd digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
249	効	勾	厚	口	向					
250		后	喉	坑	垢	好	孔	孝	宏	工
251	巧	巷	幸	広	庚	康	弘	恒	慌	抗
252	拘	控	攻	昂	晃	更	杭	校	梗	構
253	江	洪	浩	港	溝	甲	皇	硬	稿	糠
254	紅	紘	絞	綱	耕	考	肯	肱	腔	膏
255	航	荒	行	衡	講	貢	購	郊	酵	鉱
256	砿	鋼	閤	降	項	香	高	鴻	剛	劫
257	号	合	壕	拷	濠	豪	轟	麹	克	刻
258	告	国	穀	酷	鵠	黒	獄	漉	腰	甑
259	忽	惚	骨	狛	込					
260		此	頃	今	困	坤	墾	婚	恨	懇
261	昏	昆	根	梱	混	痕	紺	艮	魂	
	さ									
261										些
262	佐	叉	唆	嵯	左	差	査	沙	瑳	砂
263	詐	鎖	裟	坐	座	挫	債	催	再	最
264	哉	塞	妻	宰	彩	才	採	栽	歳	済
265	災	采	犀	砕	砦	祭	斎	細	菜	裁
266	載	際	剤	在	材	罪	財	冴	坂	阪
267	堺	榊	肴	咲	崎	埼	碕	鷺	作	削
268	咋	搾	昨	朔	柵	窄	策	索	錯	桜
269	鮭	笹	匙	冊	刷					
270		察	拶	撮	擦	札	殺	薩	雑	皐
271	鯖	捌	錆	鮫	皿	晒	三	傘	参	山
272	惨	撒	散	桟	燦	珊	産	算	纂	蚕
273	讃	賛	酸	餐	斬	暫	残			
	し									
273								仕	仔	伺
274	使	刺	司	史	嗣	四	士	始	姉	姿
275	子	屍	市	師	志	思	指	支	孜	斯
276	施	旨	枝	止	死	氏	獅	祉	私	糸
277	紙	紫	肢	脂	至	視	詞	詩	試	誌
278	諮	資	賜	雌	飼	歯	事	似	侍	児
279	字	寺	慈	持	時					
280		次	滋	治	爾	璽	痔	磁	示	而
281	耳	自	蒔	辞	汐	鹿	式	識	鴫	竺
282	軸	宍	雫	七	叱	執	失	嫉	室	悉
283	湿	漆	疾	質	実	蔀	篠	偲	柴	芝
284	屡	蕊	縞	舎	写	射	捨	赦	斜	煮
285	社	紗	者	謝	車	遮	蛇	邪	借	勺

1st - 3rd digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
286	尺	杓	灼	爵	酌	釈	錫	若	寂	弱
287	惹	主	取	守	手	朱	殊	狩	珠	種
288	腫	趣	酒	首	儒	受	呪	寿	授	樹
289	綬	需	囚	収	周					
290		宗	就	州	修	愁	拾	洲	秀	秋
291	終	繍	習	臭	舟	蒐	衆	襲	讐	蹴
292	輯	週	酋	酬	集	醜	什	住	充	十
293	従	戎	柔	汁	渋	獣	縦	重	銃	叔
294	夙	宿	淑	祝	縮	粛	塾	熟	出	術
295	述	俊	峻	春	瞬	竣	舜	駿	准	循
296	旬	楯	殉	淳	準	潤	盾	純	巡	遵
297	醇	順	処	初	所	暑	曙	渚	庶	緒
298	署	書	薯	藷	諸	助	叙	女	序	徐
299	恕	鋤	除	傷	償					
300		勝	匠	升	召	哨	商	唱	嘗	奨
301	妾	娼	宵	将	小	少	尚	庄	床	廠
302	彰	承	抄	招	掌	捷	昇	昌	昭	晶
303	松	梢	樟	樵	沼	消	渉	湘	焼	焦
304	照	症	省	硝	礁	祥	称	章	笑	粧
305	紹	肖	菖	蒋	蕉	衝	裳	訟	証	詔
306	詳	象	賞	醤	鉦	鍾	鐘	障	鞘	上
307	丈	丞	乗	冗	剰	城	場	壌	嬢	常
308	情	擾	条	杖	浄	状	畳	穣	蒸	譲
309	醸	錠	嘱	埴	飾					
310		拭	植	殖	燭	織	職	色	触	食
311	蝕	辱	尻	伸	信	侵	唇	娠	寝	審
312	心	慎	振	新	晋	森	榛	浸	深	申
313	疹	真	神	秦	紳	臣	芯	薪	親	診
314	身	辛	進	針	震	人	仁	刃	塵	壬
315	尋	甚	尽	腎	訊	迅	陣	靭		
	す									
315									笥	諏
316	須	酢	図	厨	逗	吹	垂	帥	推	水
317	炊	睡	粋	翠	衰	遂	酔	錐	錘	随
318	瑞	髄	崇	嵩	数	枢	趨	雛	据	杉
319	椙	菅	頗	雀	裾					
320		澄	摺	寸						
	せ									
320					世	瀬	畝	是	凄	制
321	勢	姓	征	性	成	政	整	星	晴	棲
322	栖	正	清	牲	生	盛	精	聖	声	製

1st - 3rd digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
323	西	誠	誓	請	逝	醒	青	静	斉	税
324	脆	隻	席	惜	戚	斥	昔	析	石	積
325	籍	績	脊	責	赤	跡	蹟	碩	切	拙
326	接	摂	折	設	窃	節	説	雪	絶	舌
327	蝉	仙	先	千	占	宣	専	尖	川	戦
328	扇	撰	栓	栴	泉	浅	洗	染	潜	煎
329	煽	旋	穿	箭	線					
330		繊	羨	腺	舛	船	薦	詮	賎	践
331	選	遷	銭	銑	閃	鮮	前	善	漸	然
332	全	禅	繕	膳	糎					
	そ									
332						噌	塑	岨	措	曾
333	曽	楚	狙	疏	疎	礎	祖	租	粗	素
334	組	蘇	訴	阻	遡	鼠	僧	創	双	叢
335	倉	喪	壮	奏	爽	宋	層	匝	惣	想
336	捜	掃	挿	掻	操	早	曹	巣	槍	槽
337	漕	燥	争	痩	相	窓	糟	総	綜	聡
338	草	荘	葬	蒼	藻	装	走	送	遭	鎗
339	霜	騒	像	増	憎					
340		臓	蔵	贈	造	促	側	則	即	息
341	捉	束	測	足	速	俗	属	賊	族	続
342	卒	袖	其	揃	存	孫	尊	損	村	遜
	た									
343	他	多	太	汰	詑	唾	堕	妥	惰	打
344	柁	舵	楕	陀	駄	騨	体	堆	対	耐
345	岱	帯	待	怠	態	戴	替	泰	滞	胎
346	腿	苔	袋	貸	退	逮	隊	黛	鯛	代
347	台	大	第	醍	題	鷹	滝	瀧	卓	啄
348	宅	托	択	拓	沢	濯	琢	託	鐸	濁
349	諾	茸	凧	蛸	只					
350		叩	但	達	辰	奪	脱	巽	竪	辿
351	棚	谷	狸	鱈	樽	誰	丹	単	嘆	坦
352	担	探	旦	歎	淡	湛	炭	短	端	箪
353	綻	耽	胆	蛋	誕	鍛	団	壇	弾	断
354	暖	檀	段	男	談					
	ち									
354						値	知	地	弛	恥
355	智	池	痴	稚	置	致	蜘	遅	馳	築
356	畜	竹	筑	蓄	逐	秩	窒	茶	嫡	着
357	中	仲	宙	忠	抽	昼	柱	注	虫	衷
358	註	酎	鋳	駐	樗	瀦	猪	苧	著	貯

1st - 3rd digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
359	丁	兆	凋	喋	寵					
360		帖	帳	庁	弔	張	彫	徴	懲	挑
361	暢	朝	潮	牒	町	眺	聴	脹	腸	蝶
362	調	諜	超	跳	銚	長	頂	鳥	勅	捗
363	直	朕	沈	珍	賃	鎮	陳			
	つ									
363								津	墜	椎
364	槌	追	鎚	痛	通	塚	栂	掴	槻	佃
365	漬	柘	辻	蔦	綴	鍔	椿	潰	坪	壷
366	嬬	紬	爪	吊	釣	鶴				
	て									
366							亭	低	停	偵
367	剃	貞	呈	堤	定	帝	底	庭	廷	弟
368	悌	抵	挺	提	梯	汀	碇	禎	程	締
369	艇	訂	諦	蹄	逓					
370		邸	鄭	釘	鼎	泥	摘	擢	敵	滴
371	的	笛	適	鏑	溺	哲	徹	撤	轍	迭
372	鉄	典	填	天	展	店	添	纏	甜	貼
373	転	顛	点	伝	殿	澱	田	電		
	と									
373									兎	吐
374	堵	塗	妬	屠	徒	斗	杜	渡	登	菟
375	賭	途	都	鍍	砥	砺	努	度	土	奴
376	怒	倒	党	冬	凍	刀	唐	塔	塘	套
377	宕	島	嶋	悼	投	搭	東	桃	梼	棟
378	盗	淘	湯	涛	灯	燈	当	痘	祷	等
379	答	筒	糖	統	到					
380		董	蕩	藤	討	謄	豆	踏	逃	透
381	鐙	陶	頭	騰	闘	働	動	同	堂	導
382	憧	撞	洞	瞳	童	胴	萄	道	銅	峠
383	鴇	匿	得	徳	涜	特	督	禿	篤	毒
384	独	読	栃	橡	凸	突	椴	届	鳶	苫
385	寅	酉	瀞	噸	屯	惇	敦	沌	豚	遁
386	頓	呑	曇	鈍						
	な									
386					奈	那	内	乍	凪	薙
387	謎	灘	捺	鍋	楢	馴	縄	畷	南	楠
388	軟	難	汝							
	に									
388				二	尼	弐	迩	匂	賑	肉
389	虹	廿	日	乳	入					

1st - 3rd digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
390		如	尿	韮	任	妊	忍	認		
	ぬ〜の									
390									濡	禰
391	祢	寧	葱	猫	熱	年	念	捻	撚	燃
392	粘	乃	廼	之	埜	嚢	悩	濃	納	能
393	脳	膿	農	覗	蚤					
	は									
393						巴	把	播	覇	杷
394	波	派	琶	破	婆	罵	芭	馬	俳	廃
395	拝	排	敗	杯	盃	牌	背	肺	輩	配
396	倍	培	媒	梅	楳	煤	狽	買	売	賠
397	陪	這	蝿	秤	矧	萩	伯	剥	博	拍
398	柏	泊	白	箔	粕	舶	薄	迫	曝	漠
399	爆	縛	莫	駁	麦					
400		函	箱	硲	箸	肇	筈	櫨	幡	肌
401	畑	畠	八	鉢	溌	発	醗	髪	伐	罰
402	抜	筏	閥	鳩	噺	塙	蛤	隼	伴	判
403	半	反	叛	帆	搬	斑	板	氾	汎	版
404	犯	班	畔	繁	般	藩	販	範	釆	煩
405	頒	飯	挽	晩	番	盤	磐	蕃	蛮	
	ひ									
405										匪
406	卑	否	妃	庇	彼	悲	扉	批	披	斐
407	比	泌	疲	皮	碑	秘	緋	罷	肥	被
408	誹	費	避	非	飛	樋	簸	備	尾	微
409	枇	毘	琵	眉	美					
410		鼻	柊	稗	匹	疋	髭	彦	膝	菱
411	肘	弼	必	畢	筆	逼	桧	姫	媛	紐
412	百	謬	俵	彪	標	氷	漂	瓢	票	表
413	評	豹	廟	描	病	秒	苗	錨	鋲	蒜
414	蛭	鰭	品	彬	斌	浜	瀕	貧	賓	頻
415	敏	瓶								
	ふ									
415			不	付	埠	夫	婦	富	冨	布
416	府	怖	扶	敷	斧	普	浮	父	符	腐
417	膚	芙	譜	負	賦	赴	阜	附	侮	撫
418	武	舞	葡	蕪	部	封	楓	風	葺	蕗
419	伏	副	復	幅	服					
420		福	腹	複	覆	淵	弗	払	沸	仏
421	物	鮒	分	吻	噴	墳	憤	扮	焚	奮
422	粉	糞	紛	雰	文	聞				

1st - 3rd digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	へ									
422							丙	併	兵	塀
423	幣	平	弊	柄	並	蔽	閉	陛	米	頁
424	僻	壁	癖	碧	別	瞥	蔑	箆	偏	変
425	片	篇	編	辺	返	遍	便	勉	娩	弁
426	鞭									
	ほ									
426		保	舗	鋪	圃	捕	歩	甫	補	輔
427	穂	募	墓	慕	戊	暮	母	簿	菩	倣
428	俸	包	呆	報	奉	宝	峰	峯	崩	庖
429	抱	捧	放	方	朋					
430		法	泡	烹	砲	縫	胞	芳	萌	蓬
431	蜂	褒	訪	豊	邦	鋒	飽	鳳	鵬	乏
432	亡	傍	剖	坊	妨	帽	忘	忙	房	暴
433	望	某	棒	冒	紡	肪	膨	謀	貌	貿
434	鉾	防	吠	頬	北	僕	卜	墨	撲	朴
435	牧	睦	穆	釦	勃	没	殆	堀	幌	奔
436	本	翻	凡	盆						
	ま									
436					摩	磨	魔	麻	埋	妹
437	昧	枚	毎	哩	槙	幕	膜	枕	鮪	柾
438	鱒	桝	亦	俣	又	抹	末	沫	迄	侭
439	繭	麿	万	慢	満					
440		漫	蔓							
	み									
440				味	未	魅	巳	箕	岬	密
441	蜜	湊	蓑	稔	脈	妙	粍	民	眠	
	む									
441										務
442	夢	無	牟	矛	霧	鵡	椋	婿	娘	
	め									
442										冥
443	名	命	明	盟	迷	銘	鳴	姪	牝	滅
444	免	棉	綿	緬	面	麺				
	も									
444							摸	模	茂	妄
445	孟	毛	猛	盲	網	耗	蒙	儲	木	黙
446	目	杢	勿	餅	尤	戻	籾	貰	問	悶
447	紋	門	匁							
	や									
447				也	冶	夜	爺	耶	野	弥

1st - 3rd digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
448	矢	厄	役	約	薬	訳	躍	靖	柳	薮
449	鑓									
	ゆ									
449		愉	愈	油	癒					
450		諭	輸	唯	佑	優	勇	友	宥	幽
451	悠	憂	揖	有	柚	湧	涌	猶	猷	由
452	祐	裕	誘	遊	邑	郵	雄	融	夕	
	よ									
452										予
453	余	与	誉	輿	預	傭	幼	妖	容	庸
454	揚	揺	擁	曜	楊	様	洋	溶	熔	用
455	窯	羊	耀	葉	蓉	要	謡	踊	遥	陽
456	養	慾	抑	欲	沃	浴	翌	翼	淀	
	ら									
456										羅
457	螺	裸	来	莱	頼	雷	洛	絡	落	酪
458	乱	卵	嵐	欄	濫	藍	蘭	覧		
	り									
458									利	吏
459	履	李	梨	理	璃					
460		痢	裏	裡	里	離	陸	律	率	立
461	葎	掠	略	劉	流	溜	琉	留	硫	粒
462	隆	竜	龍	侶	慮	旅	虜	了	亮	僚
463	両	凌	寮	料	梁	涼	猟	療	瞭	稜
464	糧	良	諒	遼	量	陵	領	力	緑	倫
465	厘	林	淋	燐	琳	臨	輪	隣	鱗	麟
	る〜れ									
466	瑠	塁	涙	累	類	令	伶	例	冷	励
467	嶺	怜	玲	礼	苓	鈴	隷	零	霊	麗
468	齢	暦	歴	列	劣	烈	裂	廉	恋	憐
469	漣	煉	簾	練	聯					
470		蓮	連	錬						
	ろ									
470					呂	魯	櫓	炉	賂	路
471	露	労	婁	廊	弄	朗	楼	榔	浪	漏
472	牢	狼	篭	老	聾	蝋	郎	六	麓	禄
473	肋	録	論							
	わ									
473				倭	和	話	歪	賄	脇	惑
474	枠	鷲	亙	亘	鰐	詫	藁	蕨	椀	湾
475	碗	腕								

1st - 3rd digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
476										
477										
478										
479										
480		弌	丐	丕	个	丱	丶	丼	丿	乂
481	乖	乘	亂	亅	豫	亊	舒	弍	于	亞
482	亟	亠	亢	亰	亳	亶	从	仍	仄	仆
483	仂	仗	仞	仭	仟	价	伉	佚	估	佛
484	佝	佗	佇	佶	侈	侏	侘	佻	佩	佰
485	侑	佯	來	侖	儘	俔	俟	俎	俘	俛
486	俑	俚	俐	俤	俥	倚	倨	倔	倪	倥
487	倅	伜	俶	倡	倩	倬	俾	俯	們	倆
488	偃	假	會	偕	偐	偈	做	偖	偬	偸
489	傀	傚	傅	傴	傲					
490		僉	僊	傳	僂	僖	僞	僥	僭	僣
491	僮	價	僵	儉	儁	儂	儖	儕	儔	儚
492	儡	儺	儷	儼	儻	儿	兀	兒	兌	兔
493	兢	竸	兩	兪	兮	冀	冂	囘	册	冉
494	冏	冑	冓	冕	冖	冤	冦	冢	冩	冪
495	冫	决	冱	冲	冰	况	冽	凅	凉	凛
496	几	處	凩	凭	凰	凵	凾	刄	刋	刔
497	刎	刧	刪	刮	刳	刹	剏	剄	剋	剌
498	剞	剔	剪	剴	剩	剳	剿	剽	劍	劔
499	劒	剱	劈	劑	辨					
500		辧	劬	劭	劼	劵	勁	勍	勗	勞
501	勣	勦	飭	勠	勳	勵	勸	勹	匆	匈
502	甸	匍	匐	匏	匕	匚	匣	匯	匱	匳
503	匸	區	卆	卅	丗	卉	卍	凖	卞	卩
504	卮	夘	卻	卷	厂	厖	厠	厦	厥	厮
505	厰	厶	參	簒	雙	叟	曼	燮	叮	叨
506	叭	叺	吁	吽	呀	听	吭	吼	吮	吶
507	吩	吝	呎	咏	呵	咎	呟	呱	呷	呰
508	咒	呻	咀	呶	咄	咐	咆	哇	咢	咸
509	咥	咬	哄	哈	咨					
510		咫	哂	咤	咾	咼	哘	哥	哦	唏
511	唔	哽	哮	哭	哺	哢	唹	啀	啣	啌
512	售	啜	啅	啖	啗	唸	唳	啝	喙	喀
513	咯	喊	喟	啻	啾	喘	喞	單	啼	喃
514	喩	喇	喨	嗚	嗅	嗟	嗄	嗜	嗤	嗔
515	嘔	嗷	嘖	嗾	嗽	嘛	嗹	噎	噐	營
516	嘴	嘶	嘲	嘸	噫	噤	嘯	噬	噪	嚆

1st - 3rd digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
517	嚀	嚊	嚠	嚔	嚏	嚥	嚮	嚶	嚴	囂
518	嚼	囁	囃	囀	囈	囎	囑	囓	囗	囮
519	囹	圀	囿	圄	圉					
520		圈	國	圍	圓	團	圖	嗇	圜	圦
521	圷	圸	坎	圻	址	坏	坩	埀	垈	坡
522	坿	垉	垓	垠	垳	垤	垪	垰	埃	埆
523	埔	埒	埓	堊	埖	埣	堋	堙	堝	塲
524	堡	塢	塋	塰	毀	塒	堽	塹	墅	墹
525	墟	墫	墺	壞	墻	墸	墮	壅	壓	壑
526	壗	壙	壘	壥	壜	壤	壟	壯	壺	壹
527	壻	壼	壽	夂	夊	夐	夛	梦	夥	夬
528	夭	夲	夸	夾	竒	奕	奐	奎	奚	奘
529	奢	奠	奧	奬	奩					
530		奸	妁	妝	佞	侫	妣	妲	姆	姨
531	姜	妍	姙	姚	娥	娟	娑	娜	娉	娚
532	婀	婬	婉	娵	娶	婢	婪	媚	媼	媾
533	嫋	嫂	媽	嫣	嫗	嫦	嫩	嫖	嫺	嫻
534	嬌	嬋	嬖	嬲	嫐	嬪	嬶	嬾	孃	孅
535	孀	孑	孕	孚	孛	孥	孩	孰	孳	孵
536	學	斈	孺	宀	它	宦	宸	寃	寇	寉
537	寔	寐	寤	實	寢	寞	寥	寫	寰	寶
538	寳	尅	將	專	對	尓	尠	尢	尨	尸
539	尹	屁	屆	屎	屓					
540		屐	屏	孱	屬	屮	乢	屶	屹	岌
541	岑	岔	妛	岫	岻	岶	岼	岷	峅	岾
542	峇	峙	峩	峽	峺	峭	嶌	峪	崋	崕
543	崗	嵜	崟	崛	崑	崔	崢	崚	崙	崘
544	嵌	嵒	嵎	嵋	嵬	嵳	嵶	嶇	嶄	嶂
545	嶢	嶝	嶬	嶮	嶽	嶐	嶷	嶼	巉	巍
546	巓	巒	巖	巛	巫	已	巵	帋	帚	帙
547	帑	帛	帶	帷	幄	幃	幀	幎	幗	幔
548	幟	幢	幤	幇	幵	并	幺	麼	广	庠
549	廁	廂	廈	廐	廏					
550		廖	廣	廝	廚	廛	廢	廡	廨	廩
551	廬	廱	廳	廰	廴	廸	廾	弃	弉	彝
552	彜	弋	弑	弖	弩	弭	弸	彁	彈	彌
553	彎	弯	彑	彖	彗	彙	彡	彭	彳	彷
554	徃	徂	彿	徊	很	徑	徇	從	徙	徘
555	徠	徨	徭	徼	忖	忻	忤	忸	忱	忝
556	悳	忿	怡	恠	怙	怐	怩	怎	怱	怛
557	怕	怫	怦	怏	怺	恚	恁	恪	恷	恟

1st - 3rd digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
558	恊	恆	恍	恣	恃	恤	恂	恬	恫	恙
559	悁	悍	惧	悃	悚					
560		悄	悛	悖	悗	悒	悧	悋	惡	悸
561	惠	惓	悴	忰	悽	惆	悵	惘	慍	愕
562	愆	惶	惷	愀	惴	惺	愃	愡	惻	惱
563	愍	愎	慇	愾	愨	愧	慊	愿	愼	愬
564	愴	愽	慂	慄	慳	慷	慘	慙	慚	慫
565	慴	慯	慥	慱	慟	慝	慓	慵	憙	憖
566	憇	憬	憔	憚	憊	憑	憫	憮	懌	懊
567	應	懷	懈	懃	懆	憺	懋	罹	懍	懦
568	懣	懶	懺	懴	懿	懽	懼	懾	戀	戈
569	戉	戍	戌	戔	戛					
570		戞	戡	截	戮	戰	戲	戳	扁	扎
571	扞	扣	扛	扠	扨	扼	抂	抉	找	抒
572	抓	抖	拔	抃	抔	拗	拑	抻	拏	拿
573	拆	擔	拈	拜	拌	拊	拂	拇	抛	拉
574	挌	拮	拱	挧	挂	挈	拯	拵	捐	挾
575	捍	搜	捏	掖	掎	掀	掫	捶	掣	掏
576	掉	掟	掵	捫	捩	掾	揩	揀	揆	揣
577	揉	插	揶	揄	搖	搴	搆	搓	搦	搶
578	攝	搗	搨	搏	摧	摯	摶	摎	攪	撕
579	撓	撥	撩	撈	撼					
580		據	擒	擅	擇	撻	擘	擂	擱	擧
581	舉	擠	擡	抬	擣	擯	攬	擶	擴	擲
582	擺	攀	擽	攘	攜	攅	攤	攣	攫	攴
583	攵	攷	收	攸	畋	效	敖	敕	敍	敘
584	敞	敝	敲	數	斂	斃	變	斛	斟	斫
585	斷	旃	旆	旁	旄	旌	旒	旛	旙	无
586	旡	旱	杲	昊	昃	旻	杳	昵	昶	昴
587	昜	晏	晄	晉	晁	晞	晝	晤	晧	晨
588	晟	晢	晰	暃	暈	暎	暉	暄	暘	暝
589	曁	暹	曉	暾	暼					
590		曄	暸	曖	曚	曠	昿	曦	曩	曰
591	曵	曷	朏	朖	朞	朦	朧	霸	朮	朿
592	朶	杁	朸	朷	杆	杞	杠	杙	杣	杤
593	枉	杰	枩	杼	杪	枌	枋	枦	枡	枅
594	枷	柯	枴	柬	枳	柩	枸	柤	柞	柝
595	柢	柮	枹	柎	柆	柧	檜	栞	框	栩
596	桀	桍	栲	桎	梳	栫	桙	档	桷	桿
597	梟	梏	梭	梔	條	梛	梃	檮	梹	桴
598	梵	梠	梺	椏	梍	桾	椁	棊	椈	棘

Appendix

14

1st - 3rd digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
599	椢	椦	棡	椌	棍					
600		棔	棧	棕	椶	椒	椄	棗	棣	椥
601	棹	棠	棯	椨	椪	椚	椣	椡	棆	楹
602	楷	楜	楸	楫	楔	楾	楮	椹	楴	椽
603	楙	椰	楡	楞	楝	榁	楪	榲	榮	槐
604	榿	槁	槓	榾	槎	寨	槊	槝	榻	槃
605	榧	樮	榑	榠	榜	榕	榴	槞	槨	樂
606	樛	槿	權	槹	槲	槧	樅	榱	樞	槭
607	樔	槫	樊	樒	櫁	樣	樓	橄	樌	橲
608	樶	橸	橇	橢	橙	橦	橈	樸	樢	檐
609	檍	檠	檄	檢	檣					
610		檗	蘗	檻	櫃	櫂	檸	檳	檬	櫞
611	櫑	櫟	檪	櫚	櫪	櫻	欅	蘖	櫺	欒
612	欖	鬱	欟	欸	欷	盜	欹	飮	歇	歃
613	歉	歐	歙	歔	歛	歟	歡	歸	歹	歿
614	殀	殄	殃	殍	殘	殕	殞	殤	殪	殫
615	殯	殲	殱	殳	殷	殼	毆	毋	毓	毟
616	毬	毫	毳	毯	麾	氈	氓	气	氛	氤
617	氣	汞	汕	汢	汪	沂	沍	沚	沁	沛
618	汾	汨	汳	沒	沐	泄	泱	泓	沽	泗
619	泅	泝	沮	沱	沾					
620		沺	泛	泯	泙	泪	洟	衍	洶	洫
621	洽	洸	洙	洵	洳	洒	洌	浣	涓	浤
622	浚	浹	浙	涎	涕	濤	涅	淹	渕	渊
623	涵	淇	淦	涸	淆	淬	淞	淌	淨	淒
624	淅	淺	淙	淤	淕	淪	淮	渭	湮	渮
625	渙	湲	湟	渾	渣	湫	渫	湶	湍	渟
626	湃	渺	湎	渤	滿	渝	游	溂	溪	溘
627	滉	溷	滓	溽	溯	滄	溲	滔	滕	溏
628	溥	滂	溟	潁	漑	灌	滬	滸	滾	漿
629	滲	漱	滯	漲	滌					
630		漾	漓	滷	澆	潺	潸	澁	澀	潯
631	潛	濳	潭	澂	潼	潘	澎	澑	濂	潦
632	澳	澣	澡	澤	澹	濆	澪	濟	濕	濬
633	濔	濘	濱	濮	濛	瀉	瀋	濺	瀑	瀁
634	瀏	濾	瀛	瀚	潴	瀝	瀘	瀟	瀰	瀾
635	瀲	灑	灣	炙	炒	炯	烱	炬	炸	炳
636	炮	烟	烋	烝	烙	焉	烽	焜	焙	煥
637	煕	熈	煦	煢	煌	煖	煬	熏	燻	熄
638	熕	熨	熬	燗	熹	熾	燒	燉	燔	燎
639	燠	燬	燧	燵	燼					
640		燹	燿	爍	爐	爛	爨	爭	爬	爰
641	爲	爻	爼	爿	牀	牆	牋	牘	牴	牾
642	犂	犁	犇	犒	犖	犢	犧	犹	犲	狃
643	狆	狄	狎	狒	狢	狠	狡	狹	狷	倏
644	猗	猊	猜	猖	猝	猴	猯	猩	猥	猾
645	獎	獏	默	獗	獪	獨	獰	獸	獵	獻
646	獺	珈	玳	珎	玻	珀	珥	珮	珞	璢
647	琅	瑯	琥	珸	琲	琺	瑕	琿	瑟	瑙
648	瑁	瑜	瑩	瑰	瑣	瑪	瑶	瑾	璋	璞
649	璧	瓊	瓏	瓔	珱					
650		瓠	瓣	瓧	瓩	瓮	瓲	瓰	瓱	瓸
651	瓷	甄	甃	甅	甌	甎	甍	甕	甓	甞
652	甦	甬	甼	畄	畍	畊	畉	畛	畆	畚
653	畩	畤	畧	畫	畭	畸	當	疆	疇	畴
654	疊	疉	疂	疔	疚	疝	疥	疣	痂	疳
655	痃	疵	疽	疸	疼	疱	痍	痊	痒	痙
656	痣	痞	痾	痿	痼	瘁	痰	痺	痲	痳
657	瘋	瘍	瘉	瘟	瘧	瘠	瘡	瘢	瘤	瘴
658	瘰	瘻	癇	癈	癆	癜	癘	癡	癢	癨
659	癩	癪	癧	癬	癰					
660		癲	癶	癸	發	皀	皃	皈	皋	皎
661	皖	皓	皙	皚	皰	皴	皸	皹	皺	盂
662	盍	盖	盒	盞	盡	盥	盧	盪	蘯	盻
663	眈	眇	眄	眩	眤	眞	眥	眦	眛	眷
664	眸	睇	睚	睨	睫	睛	睥	睿	睾	睹
665	瞎	瞋	瞑	瞠	瞞	瞰	瞶	瞹	瞿	瞼
666	瞽	瞻	矇	矍	矗	矚	矜	矣	矮	矼
667	砌	砒	礦	砠	礪	硅	碎	硴	碆	硼
668	碚	碌	碣	碵	碪	碯	磑	磆	磋	磔
669	碾	碼	磅	磊	磬					
670		磧	磚	磽	磴	礇	礒	礑	礙	礬
671	礫	祀	祠	祗	祟	祚	祕	祓	祺	祿
672	禊	禝	禧	齋	禪	禮	禳	禹	禺	秉
673	秕	秧	秬	秡	秣	稈	稍	稘	稙	稠
674	稟	禀	稱	稻	稾	稷	穃	穗	穉	穡
675	穢	穩	龝	穰	穹	穽	窈	窗	窕	窘
676	窖	窩	竈	窰	窶	竅	竄	窿	邃	竇
677	竊	竍	竏	竕	竓	站	竚	竝	竡	竢
678	竦	竭	竰	笂	笏	笊	笆	笳	笘	笙
679	笞	笵	笨	笶	筐					
680		筺	笄	筍	笋	筌	筅	筵	筥	筴
681	筧	筰	筱	筬	筮	箝	箘	箟	箍	箜
682	箚	箋	箒	箏	筝	箙	篋	篁	篌	篏
683	箴	篆	篝	篩	簑	簔	篦	篥	籠	簀
684	簇	簓	篳	篷	簗	簍	篶	簣	簧	簪
685	簟	簷	簫	簽	籌	籃	籔	籏	籀	籐
686	籘	籟	籤	籖	籥	籬	籵	粃	粐	粤
687	粭	粢	粫	粡	粨	粳	粲	粱	粮	粹
688	粽	糀	糅	糂	糘	糒	糜	糢	鬻	糯
689	糲	糴	糶	糺	紆					
690		紂	紜	紕	紊	絅	絋	紮	紲	紿
691	紵	絆	絳	絖	絎	絲	絨	絮	絏	絣
692	經	綉	絛	綏	絽	綛	綺	綮	綣	綵
693	緇	綽	綫	總	綢	綯	緜	綸	綟	綰
694	緘	緝	緤	緞	緻	緲	緡	縅	縊	縣
695	縡	縒	縱	縟	縉	縋	縢	繆	繦	縻
696	縵	縹	繃	縷	縲	縺	繧	繝	繖	繞
697	繙	繚	繹	繪	繩	繼	繻	纃	緕	繽
698	辮	繿	纈	纉	續	纒	纐	纓	纔	纖
699	纎	纛	纜	缸	缺					
700		罅	罌	罍	罎	罐	网	罕	罔	罘
701	罟	罠	罨	罩	罧	罸	羂	羆	羃	羈
702	羇	羌	羔	羞	羝	羚	羣	羯	羲	羹
703	羮	羶	羸	譱	翅	翆	翊	翕	翔	翡
704	翦	翩	翳	翹	飜	耆	耄	耋	耒	耘
705	耙	耜	耡	耨	耿	耻	聊	聆	聒	聘
706	聚	聟	聢	聨	聳	聲	聰	聶	聹	聽
707	聿	肄	肆	肅	肛	肓	肚	肭	冐	肬
708	胛	胥	胙	胝	胄	胚	胖	脉	胯	胱
709	脛	脩	脣	脯	腋					
710		隋	腆	脾	腓	腑	胼	腱	腮	腥
711	腦	腴	膃	膈	膊	膀	膂	膠	膕	膤
712	膣	腟	膓	膩	膰	膵	膾	膸	膽	臀
713	臂	膺	臉	臍	臑	臙	臘	臈	臚	臟
714	臠	臧	臺	臻	臾	舁	舂	舅	與	舊
715	舍	舐	舖	舩	舫	舸	舳	艀	艙	艘
716	艝	艚	艟	艤	艢	艨	艪	艫	舮	艱
717	艷	艸	艾	芍	芒	芫	芟	芻	芬	苡
718	苣	苟	苒	苴	苳	苺	莓	范	苻	苹
719	苞	茆	苜	茉	苙					
720		茵	茴	茖	茲	茱	荀	茹	荐	荅
721	茯	茫	茗	茘	莅	莚	莪	莟	莢	莖
722	莧	莎	莇	莊	荼	莵	荳	荵	莠	莉
723	莨	菴	萓	菫	菎	菽	萃	菘	萋	菁
724	菷	萇	菠	菲	萍	萢	萠	莽	萸	蔆
725	菻	葭	萪	萼	蕚	蒄	葷	葫	蒭	葮
726	蒂	葩	葆	萬	葯	葹	萵	蓊	葢	蒹
727	蒿	蒟	蓙	蓍	蒻	蓚	蓐	蓁	蓆	蓖
728	蒡	蔡	蓿	蓴	蔗	蔘	蔬	蔟	蔕	蔔
729	蓼	蕀	蕣	蕘	蕈					
730		蕁	蘂	蕋	蕕	薀	薤	薈	薑	薊
731	薨	蕭	薔	薛	藪	薇	薜	蕷	蕾	薐
732	藉	薺	藏	薹	藐	藕	藝	藥	藜	藹
733	蘊	蘓	蘋	藾	藺	蘆	蘢	蘚	蘰	蘿
734	虍	乕	虔	號	虧	虱	蚓	蚣	蚩	蚪
735	蚋	蚌	蚶	蚯	蛄	蛆	蚰	蛉	蠣	蚫
736	蛔	蛞	蛩	蛬	蛟	蛛	蛯	蜒	蜆	蜈
737	蜀	蜃	蛻	蜑	蜉	蜍	蛹	蜊	蜴	蜿
738	蜷	蜻	蜥	蜩	蜚	蝠	蝟	蝸	蝌	蝎
739	蝴	蝗	蝨	蝮	蝙					
740		蝓	蝣	蝪	蠅	螢	螟	螂	螯	蟋
741	螽	蟀	蟐	雖	螫	蟄	螳	蟇	蟆	螻
742	蟯	蟲	蟠	蠏	蠍	蟾	蟶	蟷	蠎	蟒
743	蠑	蠖	蠕	蠢	蠡	蠱	蠶	蠹	蠧	蠻
744	衄	衂	衒	衙	衞	衢	衫	袁	衾	袞
745	衵	衽	袵	衲	袂	袗	袒	袮	袙	袢
746	袍	袤	袰	袿	袱	裃	裄	裔	裘	裙
747	裝	裹	褂	裼	裴	裨	裲	褄	褌	褊
748	褓	襃	褞	褥	褪	褫	襁	襄	褻	褶
749	褸	襌	褝	襠	襞					
750		襦	襤	襭	襪	襯	襴	襷	襾	覃
751	覈	覊	覓	覘	覡	覩	覦	覬	覯	覲
752	覺	覽	覿	觀	觚	觜	觝	觧	觴	觸
753	訃	訖	訐	訌	訛	訝	訥	訶	詁	詛
754	詒	詆	詈	詼	詭	詬	詢	誅	誂	誄
755	誨	誡	誑	誥	誦	誚	誣	諄	諍	諂
756	諚	諫	諳	諧	諤	諱	謔	諠	諢	諷
757	諞	諛	謌	謇	謚	諡	謖	謐	謗	謠
758	謳	鞫	謦	謫	謾	謨	譁	譌	譏	譎
759	證	譖	譛	譚	譫					
760		譟	譬	譯	譴	譽	讀	讌	讎	讒
761	讓	讖	讙	讚	谺	豁	谿	豈	豌	豎
762	豐	豕	豢	豬	豸	豺	貂	貉	貅	貊

1st - 3rd digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
763	貍	貎	貔	豼	貘	戝	貭	貪	貽	貲
764	貳	貮	貶	賈	賁	賤	賣	賚	賽	賺
765	賻	贄	贅	贊	贇	贏	贍	贐	齎	贓
766	賍	贔	贖	赧	赭	赱	赳	趁	趙	跂
767	趾	趺	跏	跚	跖	跌	跛	跋	跪	跫
768	跟	跣	跼	踈	踉	跿	踝	踞	踐	踟
769	蹂	踵	踰	踴	蹊					
770		蹇	蹉	蹌	蹐	蹈	蹙	蹤	蹠	踪
771	蹣	蹕	蹶	蹲	蹼	躁	躇	躅	躄	躋
772	躊	躓	躑	躔	躙	躪	躡	躬	躰	軆
773	躱	躾	軅	軈	軋	軛	軣	軼	軻	軫
774	軾	輊	輅	輕	輒	輙	輓	輜	輟	輛
775	輌	輦	輳	輻	輹	轅	轂	輾	轌	轉
776	轆	轎	轗	轜	轢	轣	轤	辜	辟	辣
777	辭	辯	辷	迚	迥	迢	迪	迯	邇	迴
778	逅	迹	迺	逑	逕	逡	逍	逞	逖	逋
779	逧	逶	逵	逹	迸					
780		遏	遐	遑	遒	逎	遉	逾	遖	遘
781	遞	遨	遯	遶	隨	遲	邂	遽	邁	邀
782	邊	邉	邏	邨	邯	邱	邵	郢	郤	扈
783	郛	鄂	鄒	鄙	鄲	鄰	酊	酖	酘	酣
784	酥	酩	酳	酲	醋	醉	醂	醢	醫	醯
785	醪	醵	醴	醺	釀	釁	釉	釋	釐	釖
786	釟	釡	釛	釼	釵	釶	鈞	釿	鈔	鈬
787	鈕	鈑	鉞	鉗	鉅	鉉	鉤	鉈	銕	鈿
788	鉋	鉐	銜	銖	銓	銛	鉚	鋏	銹	銷
789	鋩	錏	鋺	鍄	錮					
790		錙	錢	錚	錣	錺	錵	錻	鍜	鍠
791	鍼	鍮	鍖	鎰	鎬	鎭	鎔	鎹	鏖	鏗
792	鏨	鏥	鏘	鏃	鏝	鏐	鏈	鏤	鐚	鐔
793	鐓	鐃	鐇	鐐	鐶	鐫	鐵	鐡	鐺	鑁
794	鑒	鑄	鑛	鑠	鑢	鑞	鑪	鈩	鑰	鑵
795	鑷	鑽	鑚	鑼	鑾	钁	鑿	閂	閇	閊
796	閔	閖	閘	閙	閠	閨	閧	閭	閼	閻
797	閹	閾	闊	濶	闃	闍	闌	闕	闔	闖
798	關	闡	闥	闢	阡	阨	阮	阯	陂	陌
799	陏	陋	陷	陜	陞					
800		陝	陟	陦	陲	陬	隍	隘	隕	隗
801	險	隧	隱	隲	隰	隴	隶	隸	隹	雎
802	雋	雉	雍	襍	雜	霍	雕	雹	霄	霆
803	霈	霓	霎	霑	霏	霖	霙	霤	霪	霰

1st - 3rd digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
804	霹	霽	霾	靄	靆	靈	靂	靉	靜	靠
805	靤	靦	靨	勒	靫	靱	靹	鞅	靼	鞁
806	靺	鞆	鞋	鞏	鞐	鞜	鞨	鞦	鞣	鞳
807	鞴	韃	韆	韈	韋	韜	韭	齏	韲	竟
808	韶	韵	頏	頌	頸	頤	頡	頷	頽	顆
809	顏	顋	顫	顯	顰					
810		顱	顴	顳	颪	颯	颱	颶	飄	飃
811	飆	飩	飫	餃	餉	餒	餔	餘	餡	餝
812	餞	餤	餠	餬	餮	餽	餾	饂	饉	饅
813	饐	饋	饑	饒	饌	饕	馗	馘	馥	馭
814	馮	馼	駟	駛	駝	駘	駑	駭	駮	駱
815	駲	駻	駸	騁	騏	騅	駢	騙	騫	騷
816	驅	驂	驀	驃	騾	驕	驍	驛	驗	驟
817	驢	驥	驤	驩	驫	驪	骭	骰	骼	髀
818	髏	髑	髓	體	髞	髟	髢	髣	髦	髯
819	髫	髮	髴	髱	髷					
820		髻	鬆	鬘	鬚	鬟	鬢	鬣	鬥	鬧
821	鬨	鬩	鬪	鬮	鬯	鬲	魄	魃	魏	魍
822	魎	魑	魘	魴	鮓	鮃	鮑	鮖	鮗	鮟
823	鮠	鮨	鮴	鯀	鯊	鮹	鯆	鯏	鯑	鯒
824	鯣	鯢	鯤	鯔	鯡	鰺	鯲	鯱	鯰	鰕
825	鰔	鰉	鰓	鰌	鰆	鰈	鰒	鰊	鰄	鰮
826	鰛	鰥	鰤	鰡	鰰	鱇	鰲	鱆	鰾	鱚
827	鱠	鱧	鱶	鱸	鳧	鳬	鳰	鴉	鴈	鳫
828	鴃	鴆	鴪	鴦	鶯	鴣	鴟	鵄	鴕	鴒
829	鵁	鴿	鴾	鵆	鵈					
830		鵝	鵞	鵤	鵑	鵐	鵙	鵲	鶉	鶇
831	鶫	鵯	鵺	鶚	鶤	鶩	鶲	鷄	鷁	鶻
832	鶸	鶺	鷆	鷏	鷂	鷙	鷓	鷸	鷦	鷭
833	鷯	鷽	鸚	鸛	鸞	鹵	鹹	鹽	麁	麈
834	麋	麌	麒	麕	麑	麝	麥	麩	麸	麪
835	麭	靡	黌	黎	黏	黐	黔	黜	點	黝
836	黠	黥	黨	黯	黴	黶	黷	黹	黻	黼
837	黽	鼇	鼈	皷	鼕	鼡	鼬	鼾	齊	齒
838	齔	齣	齟	齠	齡	齦	齧	齬	齪	齷
839	齲	齶	龕	龜	龠					
840		堯	槇	遙	瑤	凜	熙			

・Enter menu item numbers for direct menu access. Note that Main Menu theme must be set to ***Standard***.

◎Mail

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Inbox	–	–	–	P. 5-9
Outbox	–	–	–	P. 5-9, P. 5-21
Draft	–	–	–	P. 5-22
Compose Message	–	–	–	P. 5-3
Compose SMS	–	–	–	P. 5-4
Server Mail	Mail list	–	–	P. 5-7
	Server mail memory	–	–	P. 5-19
Retrieve New	–	–	–	P. 5-18
Template	–	–	–	P. 5-17
Mail Setting	Custom Mail Address	–	–	P. 13-22
	Scroll		1 line	P. 13-23
	Font size		Standard	
	Mail list disp.		1line＋body (List setting: Name)	
	Start attachment(auto)		OFF	
	Header/Signature		–	
	Mail box lock		–	P. 5-11
	Receiving setting		Operation preferred	P. 13-22
	Emotion/Keyword		Disp emotion: ON, Disp keyword: OFF	

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Mail Setting	S! Mail settings	–	Message Download: Auto (All), Delivery Report: OFF	P. 13-21
	SMS settings		SMS report request: OFF, SMS validity period: 3 days, SMS input character: Japanese (70 char.)	
	Check settings		–	P. 13-23
	Reset		–	

◎Yahoo! Keitai

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Yahoo! Keitai	–	–	–	P. 6-3
Bookmark	–	–	–	P. 6-9
Saved Pages	–	–	–	P. 6-9
History	–	–	–	P. 6-3
Enter URL	–	–	–	P. 6-3
PC Site Browser	–	–	See "●PC Site Browser under Yahoo! Keitai" (P. 14-31).	P. 6-5
S! Quick News	S! Quick News List	–	–	P. 6-11
	S! Loop List		–	
	Settings		See "●S! Quick News Settings under Yahoo! Keitai" (P. 14-32).	
Browser Settings	Font size	–	Standard	P. 13-26
	Scroll		Single line	P. 13-25
	Downloads		Display Image: ON, Play Sounds: ON	
	Flash Sound effect		ON	P. 13-26
	Memory manager		–	P. 13-25

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Browser Settings	Security	–	Manufacture number: ON, Send referer: ON, Cookie Settings: Enabled, Script Settings: Ask NW Access	P. 13-25
	Check settings		–	
	Initialized Browser		–	
	Reset		–	

◎S! Appli

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
S! Appli List	Download S! APP	–	–	P. 9-6
	Download LifeAPP		–	P. 10-3
Settings	Sound/Vib settings	–	Volume: Level 4, Vibration: ON	P. 13-34
	Backlight settings		Switch On/Off: Link To phone set., Blink: ON	
	Reset		–	P. 13-35
Information	–	–	–	P. 9-6

◎Settings

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Kisekae Theme	–	–	–	P. 13-3
Incoming Call	Ring volume	50	Phone, Video Call, Mail: Level 4	P. 13-11
	Select ring tone	13	Phone (Select ring tone: Pattern1, Select calling disp.: Solid WAVE), Video Call (Select ring tone: Pattern3, Select calling disp.: Solid WAVE), Mail (Select ring tone: Sound7, Select receiving disp.: Solid WAVE)	
	Vibrator	54	Phone, Video Call, Mail: OFF	
	Illumination	89	Set color (Phone, Video Call: Combination, Mail: Color 1), Set pattern: Standard, Missed info: ON	
	Manner Mode Set.	20	Manner mode	P. 13-13

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Incoming Call	Disp. phonebook image	–	ON	P. 13-12
	Answer setting	58	Any key answer	
	Mail ring time	68	Mail: ON (Ring time: 05 seconds)	P. 13-11
	Ring time(sec.)	90	Set mute seconds: OFF, Missed calls display: Display	P. 4-5
	Info notice setting	65	ON	P. 13-13
	Answering Machine	55	OFF	P. 3-4
	Disp. call/receive No.	–	Black	P. 13-13
Talk	Noise reduction	76	ON	P. 13-17
	Quality alarm	75	No tone	
	Reconnect signal	77	No tone	
	Illumination in talk	–	OFF	P. 13-18
	Set hold tone	–	On hold tone: Tone 1	
	Setting when folded	18	End the call	
Dialing	Pause dial	84	–	P. 13-16
	Sub-address setting	–	OFF	
	Prefix setting	–	国際発信 (Prefix: 0046010)	
	Headset sw to dial	–	OFF	P. 13-15
	Int'l dial assistance	–	Auto int'l call set.: ON, Country Code setting: 日本 (Country Code: 81), IDD Prefix setting: 国際発信 (IDD Prefix Code: 0046010)	P. 13-17
Video Call	Visual preference	–	Normal	P. 3-17
	Select image		On hold, Holding, Substitute image, Answering Machine, Preparing, Voice memo: Pre-installed	P. 13-19

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Video Call	Auto redial as voice	–	OFF	P. 13-19
	Display setting		Main display: Other side	
	Hands-free switch		ON	
Display	Display setting	56	Stand-by display: Baby Penguin, Wake-up display: OFF, Dialing~Mail rec'd result: Solid WAVE	P. 13-4
	Backlight	70	Lighting: ON + Saver (Light time: 02 minutes), Charging: Standard, Area: LCD + Keys, Brightness: ON + Middle	P. 13-7
	Display design	86	Color pattern: White, Icon pattern (Battery icon and Antenna icon): Solid, Soft key: Solid	P. 13-5
	Illumi	93	ON (Close display: Lace, Connection: Stripe, Clock display: Simple, Clock disp. for charge: ON, Time signal: 60 minutes, Phone: Phone call, Video Call: Phone call, Mail: Mail)	P. 13-10
	Font	66	Font type: Gothic, Thickness: Bold, Character size: Standard	P. 13-5
	Shortcut	63	Theme 1 (S! Quick News List, BI-DO-RI, TV, モバイル便利帳)	P. 13-7
	3D display setting	–	ON	P. 13-8
	言語選択 (Language)	15	日本語	P. 13-6
	Original menu	52	Account Details, Retrieve New, Ring volume, Vibrator, Alarm, Change security code	P. 13-10
	Menu display set	57	Menu display: List, Theme: Baby Penguin, Memory focus: ON	P. 13-9
	Viewer settings	–	Picture	P. 13-6
	Icons	36	–	P. 1-6
	Icons setting	–	ON	P. 13-10
	Screen Filter	–	OFF	P. 13-6
	Quick Info setting	–	Display sender	
Call Time/Charge	Call data	61	–	P. 3-11

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Call Time/Charge	Set Max Cost Limit	–	Notify setting: OFF	P. 13-18
	Reset total	60	–	P. 3-19
	Auto reset total cost	–	OFF	P. 13-18
Clock	Set main time	31	Auto time adjust: Auto, Summer time: OFF	P. 13-2
	Set sub clock	–	display method: OFF, Summer time: OFF	
	Clock display	39	Style: 24h clock, Size: Up Small , Color: Black	
	Alarm setting	–	Alarm preferred	P. 13-3
	Clock Alarm Tone set	–	Alarm Tone	
	Auto power ON	–	OFF	
	Auto power OFF	–	OFF	
Security	Function Lock	–	OFF	P. 4-3
	IC Card Lock Set.	–	IC Card Lock: OFF, IC Lock (Power-Off): Maintain	P. 10-4
	Call Remote Lock	–	OFF	P. 10-4
	Keypad lock	–	After folded: OFF, Timer: OFF	P. 4-4
	Emission OFF Mode	–	NO (not set)	P. 4-5
	Secret mode	40	OFF (not set)	P. 4-6
	Secret data only mode	41	OFF (not set)	
	Reject unknown	–	Accept	P. 4-5
	Call setting w/o ID	10	Unknown, Payphone, User unset: Accept (Select ring tone: Same as ring tone, select calling disp.: Same as display)	
	Change security code	29	9999	P. 1-18
	PIN setting	–	Change PIN1 code and Change PIN2 code: 9999, PIN1 code entry set: OFF	P. 4-2

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Connection Settings	SMS center selection	–	819066519300	P. 13-24
	Certificate		All certificates: Valid	P. 6-13
	Retrieve NW Info		–	P. 1-15
Send Location Info	–	–	Confirm	P. 13-27
External Connection	USB mode setting	–	Communication mode	P. 12-6
	Headset usage setting	51	Headset + speaker	P. 13-15
	Select microphone	–	External microphone	
	Auto answer setting	94	Phone, Video Call: OFF	
Int'l Roaming Set	NW search mode	–	Auto	P. 13-20
	Display operator name		Display OFF	
Other Settings	Keypad sound	30	OFF	P. 13-14
	Charge sound	–	ON	
	Battery level	71	–	P. 1-19
	Side key guard	–	OFF	
	Character input set	35	Input mode: 5-touch, Prediction: ON, T9 change mode: T9 Kanji change mode, CHG input size: Standard	P. 13-36
	Reset settings	23	–	P. 13-37
	Initialize	–	–	
	Software Update	–	–	P. 14-4

◎Data Folder

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
My Picture	–	46	–	P. 11-2

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Melody	—	16	—	P. 11-2
S! Appli	—	—	—	P. 11-2
Ring Songs · Music	—	—	—	P. 11-2
Videos	—	—	—	P. 11-2
TV	—	—	—	P. 11-2
Illumi	—	—	—	P. 11-2

◎Tools

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Bar Code Reader	—	—	—	P. 10-16
Receive Ir Data	—	79	—	P. 12-3
microSD Manager	—	—	—	P. 11-11
Schedule	—	45	—	P. 10-6
Alarm	—	44	Alarm1 - Alarm10: OFF	P. 10-14
To Do List	—	95	—	P. 10-9
Text Memo	—	42	—	P. 10-11
Calculator	—	85	—	P. 10-13
Play/Erase Msg.	—	—	—	P. 3-5、 P. 3-18
Play/Erase VC Msg.	—	—	—	P. 3-5
Voice Memo	—	43	—	P. 10-12
Voice Announce	—	91	—	P. 13-14
USIM Operation	—	—	—	P. 2-23, P. 5-20

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Account Details	–	0	–	P. 1-19
Forwarding Image	–	–	ON	P. 13-16
Text Reader	–	–	–	P. 10-18
Dictionary	–	–	–	–
Osaifu-Keitai	Lifestyle-Appli	–	–	P. 10-3
	IC Card Lock Set.		IC Card Lock: OFF, IC Lock (Power-Off): Maintain	P. 10-4
	Call Remote Lock		OFF	
	IC Card Illumination		ON	P. 13-36

◎Optional Services

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Caller ID Notification	Activate/Deactivate	17	ON	P. 3-21
	Get Status		–	
Voice Mail/Divert	Play Messages	–	–	P. 3-14, P. 3-15
	Voice Mail ON		–	
	Divert ON		–	
	Voice Mail/Divert OFF		–	
	Get Status		–	P. 3-20
	Erase Icon		–	
Call Waiting	ON	–	–	P. 3-20
	OFF		–	
	Get Status		–	

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Call Barring	Outgoing Calls	—	—	P. 3-21
	Incoming Calls		—	
	Cancel All Barring		—	
	Get Status		—	
	Set NW Password		—	

◎Phone Book

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
—	—	—	—	P. 2-18

◎Own Data

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Received Calls	—	24	—	P. 3-11
Dialed Calls	—	—	—	P. 3-10
Mail Member	—	97	—	P. 5-4
Quick List	—	—	—	P. 3-12
Common Phrases	—	38	Fixed common phrases at handset initial state	P. 2-14
Own Dictionary	—	82	—	P. 2-15

◎MUSIC

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
—	—	—	—	P. 9-3

◎TV

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Watch TV	–	–	–	P. 8-5
Program Guide	–	–	–	P. 8-6
Booking Program List	–	–	–	P. 8-9
Timer Recording List	–	–	–	P. 8-9
Result Timer Rec	–	–	–	P. 8-15
TV Link	–	–	–	P. 8-12
Channel List	–	–	–	P. 8-11
Channel Settings	–	–	–	P. 8-4
User Settings	Subtitles	–	ON (Wide: Bottom)	P. 13-29
	Rec. while low battery		ON	P. 13-30
	TV sound while closed		ON	P. 13-29
	ECO mode		OFF (not set)	
	Display light		Constant light	
	Data BC settings		Set image disp.: ON, Sound effect: ON	P. 13-30
	Icon always show		ON	P. 13-29
	Check TV settings		–	P. 13-31
	Reset channel setting		–	
	Reset storage area		–	
	Reset TV settings		–	

◎Camera

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
BI-DO-RI	–	–	–	P. 7-5
Photo	–	–	–	P. 7-6
Serial	–	–	–	P. 7-10
Movie	–	–	–	P. 7-8
Bar Code Reader	–	–	–	P. 10-16

◎PC Site Browser under Yahoo! Keitai

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Home	–	–	–	P. 6-5
Bookmark	–	–	–	P. 6-9
Enter URL	–	–	–	P. 6-6
History	–	–	–	
Yahoo! Keitai	–	–	–	P. 6-3
PC site brw. Settings	Warning messages	–	ON	P. 13-26
	Scroll	–	Single line	P. 13-25
	Display mode settings	–	PC screen: 100%, Small screen: Standard	P. 13-26
	Downloads	–	Display Image: ON, Play Sounds: ON	P. 13-25
	Memory manager	–	–	
	Security	–	Manufacture number: ON, Send referer: ON, Cookie Settings: Enabled, Script Settings: ON	
	Check Settings	–	–	
	Initialized Browser	–	–	
	Restore Defaults	–	–	

◎S! Quick News Settings under Yahoo! Keitai

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Auto Refresh	S! Quick News	–	OFF	P. 6-17
	General	–	OFF	
	S! Loop	–	OFF	
	Special	–	ON	
Standby Settings	Standby Disp. Set.	–	ON	P. 13-27
	Speed Settings	–	Normal	
	Unread & Read Set.	–	Unread & Read	
Set Image Disp.	–	–	ON	
Del. Quick News	–	–	–	

Main Specifications

Model		830CA
Dimensions (H x W x D)		50 x 106.1 x 16.7 mm (thickest Part) 15.0 mm (thinnest part)
Weight		105 g
Continuous Standby Time		Approx. 630 hrs
Continuous Talk Time		Voice Call: Approx. 250 min. Video Call: Approx. 100 min.
Charging Time		Approx. 120 min.
Display/ Illumination Panel	Type	Display: TFT 262,144 colors Illumination Panel:1 color LED
	Size	Display: Approx. 3.0 inches
	Pixels	Display: 102,480 pixels (240 x 427 dots) Illumination Panel: 7 x 17 dots
Camera	Imaging device	CMOS
	Lens size	1/3.2 inch
	Effective pixels	Approx. 5.2 million pixels
	Recording pixels	Approx. 4.9 million pixels
	Zoom (digital)	Up to approx. 4 x (16 steps)
	Still images	Up to approx. 1,000 files*1
Camera	Still images for continuous shooting	5 to 10 files
	Still image file format	JPEG
	Video recording time	Handset: Up to approx. 276 sec.*2 microSD™ memory card (2 GB): Up to approx. 120 min.*2
	Video file format	MPEG4
TV	Continuous watching time	Approx. 280 min. Approx. 340 min. (ECO mode)
	Maximum recording time	Approx. 600 min.*3
Storage Capacity	Chaku-Uta® and Chaku-Uta Full®	Approx. 80.0 MB*4

*1 In case the image size is QVGA (Wallpaper) and the image quality is set to ***Fine*** (the file size is 10 KB).

*2 Time for recording when recorded in the following conditions:

	Handset	microSD™ memory card
Image size	Sub QCIF (MAIL S)	
Image quality	Normal	
File size	Up to 2 MB	Long time
Recording type	Normal	

*3 Approximate time when recorded on a 2-GB microSD™ memory card.

*4 Shared with images, videos and saved pages.

Maximum Number of Storable Items

Item		Maximum Number	Maximum That Can be Protected
Phone Book entries		1,000*1	–
Schedule	Events	500	–
To Do List	Tasks	100	–
Mail	Received messages	1,000*2 *3 *4	1,000*2
	Sent messages	400*2 *3 *4	200*2
	Draft messages	20*2	–
Bookmarks	Yahoo! Keitai	100*5	–
	PC Site Browser	100*5	–
Saved Pages		100*2	50
S! Appli		96*2	–
Still images		1,000*2 *4	–
Videos		100*2 *5	–
Melodies		200*2	–
Songs		100*2	–
Illumi animations		50	–
Template (Graphic Mail)		45*6	–
Answering Machine		Voice calls: 5 (20 sec. each) Video calls: 2 (20 sec. each)	–
Voice Memo		1 (20 sec.)	–
Dialed Calls		30	–
Received Calls		30	–
Speed Dial		10 (Entry Number 000-009)	–

*1 Up to 50 entries can be saved on USIM Card.
*2 The actual number that can be saved or protected may be less depending on the data size.
*3 An additional 10 received and sent SMS messages can be saved on USIM Card.
*4 Up to 100 additional messages/files can be saved in Secret Folders.
*5 Up to 10 additional files can be saved in Secret Folder.
*6 Includes data stored at time of purchase.

Memory Card Folders & Files

Folder				File
DCIM	XXXCADCF			Still images captured with handset camera
PRIVATE	MYFOLDER	Mail		Backup data of Inbox, Outbox and Draft messages
		Utility	Calendar	Backup data of Schedule
			Contacts	Backup data of Phone Book
			Memo	Backup data of Text Memo
			Rights	Backup file of content keys
			Tasks	Backup file of To Do List
		My Items	Bookmarks	Backup file of Bookmarks
			Flash(R)	Flash® files
			Games and More	S! Appli files
			Music	Songs
			Pictograms	My Pictograms
			Pictures	Still images
			Sounds & Ringtones	Melodies
			Videos	Videos
		CA_Folder		Other files
SD_VIDEO	MGR_INFO			TV Program recording management file
	PRGXXX			TV Program recording files

Number

A

B

C

F

G

H

I

J

K

L

M

N

O

P

Q

R

T

U

V

W

Y

Warranty

A warranty card is included with handset.

- Check that the store name and purchase date sections have been filled correctly.
- Read the card carefully and store it in a safe place.
- See the card for the warranty period.

Note

- SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any damages incurred by you or third parties as a result of losing opportunities to make calls, etc. due to a failure or malfunction of this product.

After Sales Service

Refer to "Troubleshooting" (P. 14-6) before submitting your handset for repair.
If problems still persist, contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance of your area (P. 14-48), or consult with your nearest SoftBank shop.
Provide us with detailed information of your problems.

- Repair within the warranty period is carried out in accordance with the conditions of the warranty.
- Repair after the warranty period is carried out if possible, and the owner of handset is responsible for any repair costs.

Disclaimer

- SoftBank assumes no responsibility for damages arising from natural disasters beyond the control of SoftBank including earthquake/lightning/wind or flood damage, actions of third parties, or other accidents, or from intentional misuse or negligent use, misoperation or otherwise abnormal conditions of use.
- SoftBank assumes no responsibility whatsoever for incidental damages (including alteration or loss of stored content, loss of profit, interuption of business) arising from the use or failure of this product.
  It is recommended that you keep a backup copy of important data (e.g. Phone Book entries).
- SoftBank assumes no responsibility whatsoever for damages arising out of non-observance of the descriptions given in this User Guide.
- SoftBank assumes no responsibility whatsoever for damages arising out of any malfunction as a result of combination with connection devices or software with which SoftBank has had no involvement.
- It is recommended that important data be stored on computer hard disk or other medium. Even in the event of alteration or loss of stored information content, please be aware that SoftBank assumes no responsibility for data regardless of the cause of the failure or trouble.

Tip

- For information on after sales service, contact your nearest SoftBank shop or SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-48).

If you have any questions about SoftBank handsets or services, call General Information. For repairs, call Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Customer Centers

From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at 157 for General Information or 113 for Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Global Call Center

From outside Japan, dial +81-3-5351-3491 (Make sure to dial the correct number. International charges will apply.)

Call These Numbers Toll Free from Landlines

Subscription Area	Contact	
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	Free Call 0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	Free Call 0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	Free Call 0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	Free Call 0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	Free Call 0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	Free Call 0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	Free Call 0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	Free Call 0088-250-113

SoftBank 830CA User Guide

December 2008, First Edition

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

* For additional information, please visit a SoftBank Shop.

モバイル・リサイクル・ネットワーク
携帯電話・PHSのリサイクルにご協力を。

Please help the mobile industry maintain high environmental standards. Recycle your old handsets, batteries and charger units (all manufacturers and brands).

* Handsets, batteries and chargers submitted for recycling cannot be returned.

* Always erase all data recorded on old handsets (Phone Book entries, call logs, messages, etc.) before recycling.

Model: SoftBank 830CA
Manufacturer: Casio Hitachi Mobile Communications Co., Ltd.

MDT-000098-EAA0